

---

# LOGARITHMIC GEOMETRY BEYOND FS

PIOTR ACHINGER, KATHARINA HÜBNER, MARCIN LARA, AND JAKOB STIX

**Abstract** — We develop the foundations of logarithmic structures beyond the standard finiteness conditions. The motivation is the study of semistable models over general valuation rings. The key new notion is that of a morphism of finite presentation up to saturation (sfp), which is one that is qcqs and which is locally isomorphic to the saturated base change of a finitely presented morphism between fs log schemes. As in the case of schemes, sfp maps can (locally on the base) be approximated by maps between fs log schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Based on sfp maps, we define smooth, étale, and Kummer étale maps. Importantly, the maps of schemes underlying such maps are no longer of finite type in general, though surprisingly they are if the base is the spectrum of a valuation ring with algebraically closed field of fractions. These foundations allow us to extend beyond the fs case the theory of the Kummer étale site and of the Kummer étale fundamental group.

## CONTENTS

1. Introduction	2
1.1. Notation and conventions	5
Acknowledgments	5
2. Monoids beyond fs	6
2.1. Preliminaries on monoids	7
2.2. Finite presentation up to saturation	8
2.3. Faces and prime ideals	13
2.4. Elementary studies of certain classes of morphisms	14
2.5. Monoids of type (V) and of type (V <sub>div</sub> )	17
2.6. More on Kummer étale maps	25
3. Log schemes beyond fs	27
3.1. Preliminaries on saturated quasi-coherent log schemes	27
3.2. Prelog rings	31
3.3. Maps of saturated finite presentation	33
3.4. Approximation of sfp maps	36
3.5. Smooth, étale, and Kummer étale maps of log schemes	43
3.6. Appendix: Tsuji's example	46
4. The Kummer étale site and fundamental group	47
4.1. The Kummer étale site	47
4.2. Finite Kummer étale maps	53
4.3. The Kummer étale fundamental group	56
4.4. Kummer étale coverings and valuation theory	60
5. Semistable reduction over valuation rings	64
5.1. Log schemes of type (V) and of type (V <sub>div</sub> )	64
5.2. Log schemes over valuation rings	65
5.3. The standard log structure over a valuation ring	65
References	68

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Logarithmic geometry, as envisioned by Fontaine and Illusie and developed by K. Kato (see [Kat89, ACG<sup>+</sup>13, Ogu18]), is a framework allowing one to deal more easily with compactifications and degenerations in algebraic geometry. For example, a semistable scheme over a discrete valuation ring, equipped with the natural logarithmic structure, becomes smooth in the sense of logarithmic geometry.

However, while the theory of schemes has been famously developed in complete generality, allowing spectra of arbitrary commutative rings as local models, logarithmic geometry has been mostly limited to log structures which locally admit a chart by a finitely generated (or *fs*, for finitely generated and saturated) monoid. Indeed, the notion of a log structure seems to be too general to produce meaningful universal results — e.g., sheaves of differentials are not always quasi-coherent. Even if one restricts their attention to log structures which locally admit a chart (by a possibly not finitely generated monoid), called quasi-coherent, one quickly runs into foundational issues, related e.g. to the existence of charts for morphisms (see Remarks 3.1.3 and 3.1.4).

There are situations of geometric interest where the natural log structures do not satisfy the customary finiteness conditions. For example, the standard log structure on the spectrum of a valuation ring  $K^+$  with fraction field  $K$ , divided modulo units, is the non-negative part  $\Gamma_K^+ = (K^+ \cap K^\times)/(K^+)^\times$  of its value group  $\Gamma_K = K^\times/(K^+)^\times$ . This monoid will not be finitely generated unless  $K^+$  is a field or a discrete valuation ring. Therefore, in order to deal with semistable models over more general valuation rings such as  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{C}_p}$ , one has to work with monoids which, while not being finitely generated, are (close to being) finitely generated over the “base” monoid  $\Gamma_K^+$ .

The goal of this paper is to develop the necessary foundations of logarithmic structures beyond the category of *fs* log schemes, with a particular focus on the Kummer étale topology and on log schemes over (not necessarily discrete) valuation rings. In the context of semistable reduction and prismatic cohomology, similar though less general approaches have been suggested and/or developed by Koshikawa [Kos22], Adiprasito–Liu–Pak–Temkin [ALPT19], Zavyalov [Zav24], and Diao–Yao [DY24]. Our work grew out of a need for a more general theory of the Kummer étale fundamental group, which arose in the proof of finite generation of the tame fundamental group of a rigid-analytic space in [AHL24].

The new basic notion, introduced in Definition 2.2.6, is that of an *sfp* (finitely presented up to saturation) morphism of saturated<sup>1</sup> monoids.

**Definition A** (Definition 2.2.6). A morphism of saturated monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  is **sfp** (finitely presented up to saturation) if it admits a factorisation

$$P \longrightarrow Q' \longrightarrow Q$$

where  $P \rightarrow Q'$  is a morphism of finite presentation (where  $Q'$  is not necessarily saturated or integral) and where  $Q' \rightarrow Q$  induces an isomorphism  $(Q')^{\text{sat}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q$ .

Equivalently,  $P \rightarrow Q$  is *sfp* if  $Q = (P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$  for a homomorphism of *fs* monoids  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  and a map  $P_0 \rightarrow P$ . *Sfp* morphisms  $P \rightarrow Q$  are precisely the compact objects of the category of saturated monoids over  $P$ . Based on this definition, we define smooth, étale, and Kummer étale homomorphisms between saturated monoids.

**Definition B** (Definition 2.4.4). Let  $\Sigma$  be a set of primes and let  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  be a morphism of saturated monoids.

<sup>1</sup>We will mostly deal with saturated monoids, due to our intended applications. One can develop a similar story for integral monoids without putting in more effort.

- (a) We say that  $\vartheta$  is **smooth** if it is sfp, and if the kernel and the torsion part of the cokernel of  $\vartheta^{\text{gp}}: P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$  are of order prime to all  $p \in \Sigma$ .
- (b) The map  $\vartheta$  is **étale** if it is smooth and if moreover the cokernel of  $\vartheta^{\text{gp}}$  is torsion.
- (c) The map  $\vartheta$  is **Kummer étale** if it is injective, étale, and exact.

The theory of sfp morphisms of monoids becomes particularly nice over a base valutive monoid, and even better over a divisible valutive monoid. Recall that an integral monoid  $V$  is valutive if  $V^{\text{gp}} = V \cup (-V)$ . It is divisible if  $V^{\text{gp}}$  is a divisible group. Notably, the monoid  $K^+ \cap K^\times$  giving the log structure on the spectrum of a valuation ring  $K^+$  is valutive, and is divisible if  $K$  is algebraically closed. Using the foundational results of F. Kato [Kat22] and T. Tsuji [Tsu19], we show in §2.5 that if  $V \rightarrow Q$  is an sfp morphism, with  $V$  valutive, then  $V \rightarrow Q$  is integral and after a Kummer étale extension  $V \rightarrow W$  the saturated base change  $W \rightarrow (Q \oplus_V W)^{\text{sat}}$  is finitely presented and saturated, see Corollary 2.5.17 (in analogy with rigid-analytic geometry, we call this result the Reduced Fibre Theorem). In particular, if  $V$  is also divisible, then every sfp morphism  $V \rightarrow Q$  is finitely presented and saturated (an analogue of the Grauert–Remmert finiteness theorem in rigid-analytic geometry). Due to these useful features, and motivated by the geometric applications, we introduce the following notion: a monoid is of type (V) (resp. of  $(V_{\text{div}})$ ) if it is sfp over a valutive (resp. divisible valutive) monoid.

In Section 3 we turn our attention to log schemes. The log schemes we consider are saturated in the sense that they admit local charts by saturated monoids (see Remark 3.1.1).

**Definition C** (Definition 3.3.1 and Remarks 3.3.2). A morphism of saturated log schemes  $Y \rightarrow X$  is **locally sfp** if étale locally on source and target it admits a chart by an sfp morphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  such that the induced strict map

$$Y \longrightarrow X \times_{\text{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[P])} \text{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[Q])$$

is of finite presentation (as a morphism of schemes). We say that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is **sfp** if it is locally sfp and qcqs.

If  $X$  is an fs log scheme, a (locally) sfp map  $Y \rightarrow X$  is just a morphism of fs log schemes whose underlying map of schemes is (locally) of finite presentation. Crucially, we show in Corollary 3.3.4 that (locally) sfp morphisms enjoy a “chart lifting property”, which allows us to show e.g. that they are stable under composition and saturated base change. One of our main results concerning sfp morphisms of log schemes is that a qcqs map  $Y \rightarrow X$  is sfp if and only if étale locally on  $X$  it is the saturated base change of a map of fs log schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . More generally, we obtain the following approximation result in the style of [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>, Théorème 8.5.2].

**Theorem D** (Theorem 3.4.5). *Let  $\{X_i\}$  be an affine charted inverse system (Definition 3.4.4) of qcqs saturated log schemes and let  $X = \varprojlim X_i$  be its inverse limit. Denote by  $\mathbf{Sfp}_X$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i}$ ) the category of sfp morphisms with target  $X$  (resp.  $X_i$ ). Then, saturated base change induces an equivalence of categories*

$$\varprojlim_{i \in I} \mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sfp}_X.$$

This theorem allows us to reduce many questions regarding saturated log schemes to the case of fs log structures studied in the literature. One might hope that it could be supplemented with an “absolute approximation” result in the style of Thomason–Trobeaugh [TT90, Theorem C.9], to the effect that every qcqs saturated log scheme can be expressed as the inverse limit  $X = \varprojlim X_i$  of an affine charted inverse system where  $X_i$  are fs and of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . However, we show in Example 3.4.8 that this hope is too optimistic.

Again, the notion of an sfp morphism is the base for the definitions of smooth, étale, and Kummer étale morphisms.

**Definition E** (Definition 3.5.1). A morphism of saturated log schemes  $Y \rightarrow X$  is **smooth** (resp. **étale**, resp. **Kummer étale**) if étale locally on source and target it admits a chart by a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  (with  $\Sigma$  the set of primes non-invertible on  $X$ ) such that the induced strict map

$$Y \longrightarrow X \times_{\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[P])} \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[Q])$$

is smooth (resp. étale, resp. étale). In particular, such a morphism is locally sfp.

It is important to note that the morphisms of schemes underlying smooth maps might not be of finite type. For example, we prove in §4.4 that if  $(K, K^+)$  is a henselian valued field and  $L/K$  is a tamely ramified finite separable extension, then with the standard log structures the morphism  $\mathrm{Spec}(L^+) \rightarrow \mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  is Kummer étale. However, we show in Lemma 2.5.4 that it very rarely happens that  $L^+$  is finite over  $K^+$  if  $K^+$  is not a discrete valuation ring (see §4.4 for explicit examples).

With these foundations in place, we study the Kummer étale topology  $X_{\mathrm{két}}$  and the Kummer étale fundamental group  $\pi_1(X)$  in Section 4. The theory largely parallels the fs case. Note, however, that *finite* Kummer étale covers are Kummer étale maps  $Y \rightarrow X$  whose underlying map of schemes is integral (but not necessarily finite). It therefore takes some effort to descend such maps to finite Kummer étale morphisms between fs log schemes (see Proposition 4.2.6). The following theorem summarizes the results.

**Theorem F.** *Let  $X$  be a saturated log scheme.*

- (a) (Subcanonicity, Proposition 4.1.6) *The site  $X_{\mathrm{két}}$  is subcanonical (representable presheaves are sheaves).*
- (b) (Topological invariance, Proposition 4.1.7) *If  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  is a strict universal homeomorphism, then  $X_{\mathrm{két}} \simeq X_{0, \mathrm{két}}$ .*
- (c) (Coherence, Proposition 4.1.10 (a)) *If  $X$  is qcqs, then  $\mathbf{Sh}(X_{\mathrm{két}})$  is a coherent topos.*
- (d) (Approximation, Proposition 4.1.10 (b)) *If  $X = \varprojlim X_i$  is the inverse limit of an affine charted inverse system of qcqs saturated log schemes, then  $\mathbf{Sh}(X_{\mathrm{két}}) \simeq \varprojlim \mathbf{Sh}(X_{i, \mathrm{két}})$ .*
- (e) (Descent, Proposition 4.3.6) *The category  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X$  of finite Kummer étale maps  $Y \rightarrow X$  is equivalent to the category  $\mathbf{lcc}(X_{\mathrm{két}})$  of locally constant Kummer étale sheaves of finite sets on  $X$ .*

As a rather formal consequence of (e), if  $X$  is connected and  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$  is a log geometric point, then  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X$  is a Galois category on which  $\bar{x}$  induces a fibre functor. We denote by  $\pi_1(X, \bar{x})$  the corresponding fundamental group and call it the **Kummer étale fundamental group** of  $X$ . We exemplify it in the case of spectra of valuation rings with their standard log structure by showing that the Kummer étale fundamental group agrees with the tame Galois group of the fraction field, which is a non-noetherian variant of Abhyankar's lemma.

**Theorem G** (Abhyankar's Lemma, Corollary 4.4.9). *Let  $K^+$  be a henselian valuation ring with fraction field  $K$ . We let  $S_K = \mathrm{Spec}(K^+ \cap K^\times \rightarrow K^+)$  be the scheme  $\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  endowed with the log structure charted by the valutive monoid  $K^+ \cap K^\times$ . Then, there exists a canonical isomorphism of profinite groups*

$$\mathrm{Gal}^t(K^{\mathrm{sep}}/K) \xrightarrow{\sim} \pi_1(S_K, \star)$$

*between the tame quotient  $\mathrm{Gal}^t(K^{\mathrm{sep}}/K)$  of the absolute Galois group  $\mathrm{Gal}(K^{\mathrm{sep}}/K)$  and the Kummer étale fundamental group of  $S_K$ .*

The final Section 5 is devoted to smooth log schemes over the spectrum of a valuation ring  $K^+$  endowed with the standard log structure. We first introduce, in analogy with non-archimedean geometry, the following notion: a saturated log scheme is of type (V) (resp.  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ ) if it locally

admits a chart by a monoid of  $(V)$  (resp.  $(V_{\text{div}})$ ). Thus, if  $X$  a log scheme which is locally sfp over  $\text{Spec}(K^+)$ , then  $X$  is of type  $(V)$ , and of type  $(V_{\text{div}})$  if the fraction field  $K$  of  $K^+$  is algebraically closed. The key result, proved using Zavyalov's approximation lemma [Zav24, Lemma A.2], is the following.

**Theorem H** (Proposition 5.3.1). *Let  $K^+$  be a microbial valuation ring with fraction field  $K$ . Suppose that  $K^+$  is discretely valued or of residue characteristic zero or that  $K$  is algebraically closed. Endow  $S = \text{Spec}(K^+)$  with the log structure charted by the valuative monoid  $K^+ \cap K^\times$ . Let  $X \rightarrow S$  be a smooth and vertical morphism of saturated log schemes. Then the log structure on  $X$  agrees with the one induced by the open subset  $X \times_S \text{Spec}(K)$ .*

This above theorem (or rather its variant for formal schemes) will play an important role in our subsequent paper [AHL24], allowing us to relate the Kummer étale fundamental group of the special fibre to the (suitably defined) tame fundamental group of the rigid-analytic generic fibre. We expect the theory developed here to be useful in other contexts as well.

### 1.1. Notation and conventions.

- We denote the category of finite sets by **sets**.
- The symbols  $\varinjlim$  and  $\varprojlim$  denote filtered colimits and cofiltered limits, respectively. We use the symbols  $\lim$  and  $\text{colim}$  to denote more general limits and colimits.
- For an object  $X$  of a category  $\mathcal{C}$ , we denote by  $\mathcal{C}_{/X}$  the category of objects over  $X$  (morphisms  $Y \rightarrow X$ ) and by  $\mathcal{C}_{X/}$  the category of objects under  $X$  (morphisms  $X \rightarrow Z$ ).
- $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$  considered as a monoid with  $+$ .
- We denote log schemes by single symbols e.g.  $X$  (not  $(X, \mathcal{M}_X)$ ) and the underlying scheme is denoted by  $\underline{X}$ . For log schemes and maps between them, we use adjectives like regular, smooth, étale to mean the respective notions in log geometry (log regular, log smooth, log étale). In particular, if  $X$  is a saturated log scheme, we denote by  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X$  the category of finite Kummer étale maps to  $X$ , see Definition 4.2.1.
- The underlying topological space of a (log) scheme  $X$  is denoted by  $|X|$ .
- The monoid structure on  $\mathcal{M}_X$  and on abstract monoids is written additively.
- Fibre products of integral (resp. saturated) log schemes within the category of integral (resp. saturated) log schemes will be denoted by

$$X \times_S^{\text{int}} Y \quad (\text{resp. } X \times_S^{\text{sat}} Y).$$

- Unless otherwise specified, ‘locally’ or ‘étale locally’ means ‘strict étale locally,’ or equivalently ‘étale locally on the underlying scheme.’
- The valuation ring of a valued field  $K$  is denoted  $K^+$ . Its value group is denoted by  $\Gamma_K$ , and its set of non-negative elements by  $\Gamma_K^+$ . The monoid structure on  $\Gamma_K^+$  is typically written additively, for compatibility with the convention in log geometry.

**Acknowledgments.** First and foremost we thank IMPAN at Sopot for excellent working conditions during our stay in September 2023 when this project started. We also thank the University of Heidelberg for hosting us during an intense few weeks in February 2024.

We thank Jarek Buczyński for help with the proof of Proposition 2.5.11 and Jakub Byszewski for help with Example 2.5.3 (3). We thank Veronika Ertl-Bleimhofer for her comments on the manuscript and Alberto Vezzani and Michael Temkin for helpful discussions. We thank Takeshi Tsuji and Arthur Ogus for providing useful counterexamples.

**Funding.** The first author (PA) was supported by the project KAPIBARA funded by the European Research Council (ERC) under the European Union’s Horizon 2020 research and innovation programme (grant agreement No 802787). The second to fourth authors (KH, ML, and

JS) acknowledge support by Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft (DFG) through the Collaborative Research Centre TRR 326 *Geometry and Arithmetic of Uniformized Structures* project number 444845124. The third author (ML) was later supported by the National Science Centre, Poland, grant number 2023/51/D/ST1/02294. For the purpose of Open Access, the author has applied a CC-BY public copyright licence to any Author Accepted Manuscript (AAM) version arising from this submission.

## 2. MONOIDS BEYOND FS

In this section, we develop the theory of commutative monoids needed for the extension of logarithmic geometry beyond the setting of fs log schemes in Section 3. The natural relative version of an fs monoid is that of a map of saturated monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  which is finitely presented up to saturation (sfp for short), meaning that  $Q$  is the saturation of a finitely presented monoid over  $P$  (Definition 2.2.6). The reason for not working simply with maps of finite presentation is that they are not preserved under pushouts in the category of saturated monoids, while of course we want natural classes of morphisms of saturated log schemes (log smooth, Kummer étale etc.) to be preserved under pullback. The map  $P \rightarrow Q$  being sfp means precisely that  $Q$  is a compact object in the category of saturated monoids over  $P$ , or that it arises via saturated pushout from a map of fs monoids  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  (Proposition 2.2.10). This allows one to reduce questions about sfp maps to the case of fs monoids, similarly to how one reduces questions about finitely presented maps of qcqs schemes to the case of schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

The geometric situation in need of such an extension is that of a semistable scheme over a general valuation ring  $K^+$ . In this case, the ‘base’ monoid is the non-negative part  $\Gamma_K^+$  of the value group  $\Gamma_K$  of  $K$ , which will not be finitely generated unless  $K$  is trivially or discretely valued. However, the monoid  $\Gamma_K^+$  is *valuative*: for every element  $x \in \Gamma_K = (\Gamma_K^+)^{\text{gp}}$ , either  $x \in \Gamma_K^+$  or  $-x \in \Gamma_K^+$ . As we shall see, the theory of monoids which are sfp over a valuative monoid has numerous favourable properties. We call them monoids of type (V), and in the case when the valuative monoid is divisible, of type  $(V_{\text{div}})$ , see §2.5.

**Remark 2.0.1** (Analogies with non-archimedean geometry). Our approach is guided by analogy with non-archimedean geometry, and our terminology reflects this. A formal scheme of type (V) is one locally of the form  $\text{Spf}(\mathcal{A})$  for an algebra  $\mathcal{A}$  topologically of finite presentation (tfp) over a complete microbial valuation ring  $K^+$  [Bos14, §7.3]. A theorem of Nagata [Nag66, Theorem 3], generalized by Raynaud and Gruson [RG71, Corollaire I 3.4.7], implies that a topologically finitely generated (tft)  $K^+$ -algebra which is torsion-free is automatically finitely presented. Suppose  $K^+$  is of rank one, let  $A$  be a geometrically reduced affinoid  $K$ -algebra, and let  $A^\circ$  denote its subring of powerbounded elements. By the Grauert–Remmert finiteness theorem [BGR84, Corollary 6.4.1/5], if  $K$  is either discretely valued or stable [BGR84, §3.6] and its value group  $\Gamma$  is divisible (e.g.  $K = \overline{K}$ ), then  $A^\circ$  is tfp over  $K^\circ = K^+$ . In general, this may fail even if  $A$  is a finite separable extension of  $K$  [BGR84, 3.6.1, Example]. However, one can find a tfp  $K^\circ$ -algebra  $\mathcal{A}$  with  $A = \mathcal{A}_K$ , and then  $A^\circ$  equals the integral closure of  $\mathcal{A}$  in  $A$  [Bos14, Theorem 3.1/17]. Thus  $A^\circ$  is “finitely presented up to integral closure.” Moreover, by the Reduced Fibre Theorem [BLR95, Theorem 1.3], after passing to a finite extension  $L$  of  $K$  we achieve that  $A^\circ$  is tfp.

Similarly, let  $V$  be a valuative monoid, let  $P'$  be a finitely presented monoid over  $V$ , and let  $P$  be its saturation. While  $V \rightarrow P$  is sfp by definition, it may happen that  $P$  is no longer finitely presented (or even finitely generated) over  $V$ , see Example 2.5.3. However, using results of F. Kato and T. Tsuji we show that this is true if  $V$  is valuative and divisible (Corollary 2.5.18). Moreover, one can always make  $P$  finitely presented by passing to a “finite” extension of  $V$  (Corollary 2.5.17). One also has a version of the finite presentation result of Nagata (Corollary 2.5.9), as well as a version of “Néron desingularisation” (Proposition 2.5.11).



**2.1. Preliminaries on monoids.** All monoids are commutative and the operations are typically written additively. We recall some basic notions [Ogu18, Chapter I].

**Integral and saturated monoids.** For a monoid  $P$ , we denote by  $P \rightarrow P^{\text{gp}}$  its initial homomorphism into a group, and call  $P$  **integral** if this map is injective. We call  $P$  **fine** if it is integral and finitely generated. A monoid  $P$  is **saturated** if it is integral and for every  $p \in P^{\text{gp}}$  and  $n \geq 1$  such that  $np \in P$ , we have  $p \in P$ . A monoid  $P$  is **fs** (fine and saturated) if it is finitely generated and saturated. The subgroup of invertible elements of  $P$  is denoted by  $P^\times$ , and we say that  $P$  is **sharp** if  $P^\times = 0$ .

For an integral monoid  $M$  and a subset  $S$ , the **saturation of  $S$  in  $M$**  consists of all  $p \in M$  for which there exists an  $n \geq 1$  such that  $np$  belongs to the submonoid of  $M$  generated by  $S$ . The inclusion of integral (resp. saturated) monoids into all monoids admits a left adjoint, the **integralisation**  $P \mapsto P^{\text{int}} = \text{im}(P \rightarrow P^{\text{gp}})$  (resp. the **saturation**  $P \mapsto P^{\text{sat}}$  defined to be the saturation of  $P^{\text{int}}$  as a subset of  $P^{\text{gp}}$ ).

**Lemma 2.1.1.** *Let  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  be an injective map of integral monoids. Then  $\vartheta^{\text{gp}}: P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$  is injective.*

*Proof.* The groupification  $M^{\text{gp}}$  of a monoid  $M$  can be constructed explicitly as  $M \times M / \sim$ , where

$$(x, y) \sim (x', y') \iff \exists z \in M : x + y' + z = x' + y + z.$$

If  $M$  is integral, then the cancellation law holds for  $M$  and so  $z$  can be omitted.

If  $\vartheta^{\text{gp}}([(x, y)]) = 0$  in  $Q^{\text{gp}}$ , then  $(\vartheta(x), \vartheta(y)) \sim (0, 0)$  holds. In other words  $\vartheta(x)$  equals  $\vartheta(y)$ , since  $Q$  is integral. As  $\vartheta$  is injective,  $x$  equals  $y$ , and thus  $[(x, y)] = 0$  and  $\vartheta^{\text{gp}}$  is injective.  $\square$

**Limits and colimits.** The categories of monoids, integral monoids, and saturated monoids admit all limits and colimits, see [Ogu18, Chapter I §1.1]. The inclusion functors preserve limits (being right adjoints) and importantly also filtered colimits [Ogu18, Proposition I 1.3.6]. To avoid confusion, we will denote by  $P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0$  the pushout of  $P \leftarrow P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  in the category of monoids. In analogy with the theory of commutative rings, such a pushout will often be referred to as the *base change* of  $Q_0$  to  $P$ . If  $P$ ,  $P_0$ , and  $Q_0$  are saturated, the corresponding pushout  $Q$  in the category of saturated monoids admits the following description (compare [DY24, §2.4])

$$Q = (P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}} \subseteq Q^{\text{gp}} = P^{\text{gp}} \oplus_{P_0^{\text{gp}}} Q_0^{\text{gp}}$$

is the saturation of the union of the images of  $P$  and  $Q_0$  in  $Q^{\text{gp}}$ . We will also refer to it as the *saturated base change* of  $Q_0$  to  $P$ .

**Lemma 2.1.2.** *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be the pushout (resp. integral or saturated pushout) of a morphism of monoids (resp. integral or saturated monoids)  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  along a map  $P_0 \rightarrow P$ . Then the natural map*

$$Q_0^{\text{gp}} / P_0^{\text{gp}} \longrightarrow Q^{\text{gp}} / P^{\text{gp}}$$

*is an isomorphism. The natural map*

$$\ker(P_0^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_0^{\text{gp}}) \longrightarrow \ker(P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}})$$

*is surjective, and it is even an isomorphism if  $P_0 \rightarrow P$  is an injective map of integral monoids.*

*Proof.* Since groupification is left adjoint, it commutes with pushouts. So the lemma actually contains a claim about the pushout in the category of abelian groups. It follows by the snake

lemma applied to the diagram (and Lemma 2.1.1 for the last assertion)

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 0 & \longrightarrow & P_0^{\text{gp}} & \xrightarrow{x \mapsto (x, -x)} & P_0^{\text{gp}} \oplus P^{\text{gp}} & \longrightarrow & P^{\text{gp}} \longrightarrow 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & \text{im}(P_0^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_0^{\text{gp}} \oplus P^{\text{gp}}) & \longrightarrow & Q_0^{\text{gp}} \oplus P^{\text{gp}} & \longrightarrow & Q^{\text{gp}} \longrightarrow 0.
 \end{array}
 \quad \square$$

**Short exact sequences of monoids.** By a **short exact sequence** of monoids we mean a sequence of integral monoids

$$0 \longrightarrow G \longrightarrow M \xrightarrow{\varphi} N \longrightarrow 0,$$

where  $G$  is a subgroup of  $M$  and  $\varphi: M \rightarrow N$  identifies  $N$  with the set of  $G$ -orbits. This is equivalent to saying that the sequence of associated groups is exact and the map  $\varphi: M \rightarrow N$  is **exact** (recalled in Definition 2.4.1 (a) below). We shall also write  $N = M/G$  in this situation. In the special case  $G = M^\times$  being the largest subgroup of  $M$ , we denote  $M/G = M/M^\times$  by  $\overline{M}$ .

An often useful fact about short exact sequences of monoids is that providing a section of the map  $M \rightarrow N$  is equivalent to splitting the associated exact sequence of groups. Indeed, since  $\varphi$  is exact, a section of  $M^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow N^{\text{gp}}$  base changes along  $N \rightarrow N^{\text{gp}}$  to a map  $N \rightarrow N \times_{N^{\text{gp}}} M^{\text{gp}} = M$  which is a section of  $\varphi$ .

**2.2. Finite presentation up to saturation.** Let  $f: P \rightarrow Q$  be a homomorphism of monoids. A **generating set** for  $Q$  over  $P$  is a subset  $S \subseteq Q$  for which the induced map of  $P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S \rightarrow Q$  is surjective. We say that  $f$  is of **finite type** (or that  $Q$  is finitely generated over  $P$ ) if  $Q$  admits a finite generating set over  $P$ .

A **congruence**  $E$  on a monoid  $M$  is a submonoid  $E \subseteq M \times M$  which is also an equivalence relation. In this case, the set of equivalence classes  $M/E$  is a monoid and the projection  $M \rightarrow M/E$  is a monoid homomorphism. For a morphism of monoids  $\vartheta: M \rightarrow N$ , the fibre product  $E = M \times_N M$  is a congruence, called the **kernel congruence** of  $\vartheta$ . If  $M \rightarrow N$  is a surjective monoid homomorphism, then  $N \simeq M/E$  where  $E$  is the kernel congruence. For a subset  $R \subseteq M \times M$  (called a set of **relations**), the **congruence generated by  $R$**  is the smallest congruence  $E \subseteq M \times M$  containing  $R$ . We write  $M/R$  for  $M/E$  and call it the **quotient of  $M$  by the set of relations  $R$** . The morphism  $M \rightarrow M/R$  is initial among the maps  $f: M \rightarrow N$  with the property that  $f(a) = f(b)$  for every  $(a, b) \in R$ .

For a monoid homomorphism  $f: P \rightarrow Q$ , a **presentation**  $(S, R)$  of  $Q$  over  $P$  consists of a generating set  $S \subseteq Q$  and a set of relations  $R \subseteq (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)^2$  such that the induced map  $P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S \rightarrow Q$  identifies  $Q$  with the quotient  $(P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)/R$ . We say that  $f$  is of **finite presentation** (or that  $Q$  is finitely presented over  $P$ ) if  $Q$  admits a presentation  $(S, R)$  where both  $S$  and  $R$  are finite (see [AR94, §3.10] for a general notion of a finitely presented object in any algebraic theory).

A monoid  $P$  is **finitely generated** (resp. **finitely presented**) if the map  $0 \rightarrow P$  is of finite type (resp. of finite presentation).

**Notation 2.2.1.** We denote by  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P/}$  the category of saturated monoids over the monoid  $P$ , and by  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P/}$  the category of monoids over  $P$ . Here a monoid over  $P$  is a morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  of monoids, which is an object under  $P$  in the categorical sense.

**Lemma 2.2.2.** *A morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  of monoids is of finite presentation if and only if  $Q$  is a compact object of  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P/}$ .*

*Proof.* This is [AR94, Corollary 3.13]. □

**Lemma 2.2.3.** *Base change (pushout in the category of monoids) preserves finite type (resp. finite presentation).*



*Proof.* Let  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  be a morphism of monoids and let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be the base change along  $P_0 \rightarrow P$ . If  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  is of finite type generated by a finite set  $S \subseteq Q_0$ , then  $Q$  is also finitely generated over  $P$  by the image of  $S$  under the map  $Q_0 \rightarrow Q$ .

Let now  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  be of finite presentation. By Lemma 2.2.2 we must show that the pushout along  $P_0 \rightarrow P$  of a compact object in  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P_0/}$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P/}$ . But this is formal since base change preserves compact objects: for any filtered colimit  $T = \varinjlim_i T_i$  of monoids over  $P$ , we have

$$\mathrm{Hom}_P(Q, T) = \mathrm{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, T) = \varinjlim_i \mathrm{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, T_i) = \varinjlim_i \mathrm{Hom}_P(Q, T_i). \quad \square$$

**Lemma 2.2.4.** *Any morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  between finitely presented monoids is of finite presentation.*

*Proof.* By Lemma 2.2.2 it is equivalent to show that a morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  of compact objects of the category of monoids is a compact object in the category  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P/}$  of monoids over  $P$ . But this is again just formal.  $\square$

**Proposition 2.2.5.** *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be a morphism of monoids. The following are equivalent:*

- (a) *The morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  is of finite presentation.*
- (b) *The monoid  $Q$  is a compact object of  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P/}$ .*
- (c) *There exists a pushout square in the category of monoids*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q_0 \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P_0 \end{array}$$

where  $P_0$  and  $Q_0$  are finitely presented monoids.

*Proof.* We already cited [AR94, Corollary 3.13] for the equivalence (a)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (b).

(c)  $\Rightarrow$  (a): the morphism  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  is finitely presented by Lemma 2.2.4. Then the base change is finitely presented by Lemma 2.2.3.

(a)  $\Rightarrow$  (c): Let  $S \subseteq Q$  be a finite generating set of  $Q$  over  $P$  such that the congruence  $E \subseteq (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)^2$  defining  $Q$  as a quotient of  $P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S$  is generated by the finite set  $R \subseteq E$ . Let  $\pi_1, \pi_2: (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)^2 \rightarrow P$  denote the two projections, and let  $T = \pi_1(R) \cup \pi_2(R)$  be the set of elements that occur as  $P$ -components of elements in tuples in  $R$ .

Define  $P_0 = \mathbb{N}^T$  and consider  $T$  as a subset of  $\mathbb{N}^T$  as the set of generators. Each element of  $R$  has a unique preimage in  $(T \times \mathbb{N}^S)^2$  under the map induced by  $P_0 \oplus \mathbb{N}^S \rightarrow P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S$  that maps a generator of  $\mathbb{N}^T = P_0$  to the respective element in  $P$ . Let  $R_0$  be the union of these preimages, so that  $R_0$  tautologically lifts  $R$ . Define further the quotient

$$Q_0 = (P_0 \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)/R_0.$$

Then there is a commutative square as in the claim (c) induced by the morphism  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  and the inclusions  $T \rightarrow P$  and  $S \rightarrow Q$ . The square is a pushout square by construction and the definition of finite presentation. This shows (c) since  $P_0$  and  $Q_0$  are finitely presented by construction.  $\square$

**Definition 2.2.6.** Let  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  be a morphism of saturated monoids.

- (1) A **sat-generating set** for  $Q$  over  $P$  is a subset  $S \subseteq Q$  such that  $Q$  equals the saturation in  $Q^{\mathrm{gp}}$  of the sub-monoid generated by  $S$  and the image of  $P$ .
- (2) We say that  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  is **of finite type up to saturation (sft)** if it admits a finite sat-generating set, or equivalently if there exists a factorisation

$$P \longrightarrow Q' \longrightarrow Q \tag{2.2.1}$$

where the map  $P \rightarrow Q'$  is of finite type and the map  $Q' \rightarrow Q$  induces an isomorphism  $(Q')^{\text{sat}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q$ .

- (3) A **sat-presentation** for  $Q$  over  $P$  is a pair  $(S, R)$  where  $S \subseteq Q$  is a sat-generating set and  $R \subseteq (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)^2$  is a subset such that  $Q' = P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S / R$  fits into a factorization (2.2.1) where again  $(Q')^{\text{sat}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q$  (we do not assume that  $Q' \rightarrow Q$  is injective).
- (4) We say that  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  is **of finite presentation up to saturation (sfp)** if it admits a sat-presentation  $(S, R)$  where both  $S$  and  $R$  are finite, or equivalently if there exists a factorisation (2.2.1) where  $P \rightarrow Q'$  is of finite presentation.

**Remark 2.2.7.** It is not true that every sfp morphism is of finite type, see Example 2.5.3 (2) and Example 2.5.3 (3), where the morphisms are even Kummer étale (Definition 2.4.4).

**Lemma 2.2.8.** *The saturated base change of an sft (resp. sfp) morphism is again sft (resp. sfp).*

*Proof.* This follows from the definition of sft (resp. sfp) maps, Lemma 2.2.3 and the fact that saturation commutes with (saturated) pushouts.  $\square$

We first characterise sfp morphisms with source an fs monoid.

**Proposition 2.2.9.** *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be a morphism of saturated monoids with  $P$  an fs monoid. The following are equivalent:*

- (a) *The monoid  $Q$  is fs.*
- (b) *The morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sft.*
- (c) *The morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  is of finite type.*
- (d) *The morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sfp.*
- (e) *The morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  is of finite presentation.*

*Proof.* (a)  $\Rightarrow$  (e): By [Ogu18, Theorem I 2.1.7], every fs monoid is finitely presented. Assertion (e) follows from Lemma 2.2.4.

The implications (e)  $\Rightarrow$  (d)  $\Rightarrow$  (b) and (e)  $\Rightarrow$  (c)  $\Rightarrow$  (b) are trivial. So we are left to prove the following.

(b)  $\Rightarrow$  (a): Pick a factorisation  $P \rightarrow Q' \rightarrow Q$  with  $P \rightarrow Q'$  finitely generated and  $Q' \rightarrow Q$  an isomorphism after saturation. As an fs monoid,  $P$  is finitely generated, hence  $Q'$  is finitely generated. Then  $Q$  is fs, being the saturation of a finitely generated monoid by Gordan's Lemma (cf. [Sti02, Lemma 3.1.1]).  $\square$

For general sfp morphisms, we have the following important characterisations.

**Proposition 2.2.10.** *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be a morphism of saturated monoids. The following are equivalent:*

- (1) *The morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sfp.*
- (2) *The monoid  $Q$  is a compact object of  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P/}$ .*
- (3) *There exists a pushout square in the category of saturated monoids*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q_0 \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P_0 \end{array}$$

(so  $Q = (P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$ ) where  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  is a morphism of fs monoids.

The above conditions (1)–(3) further imply and, if  $P \rightarrow Q$  is injective, are equivalent to the following condition:

- (4) *The morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sft.*

*Proof.* (1)  $\Rightarrow$  (3): Let  $P \rightarrow Q' \rightarrow Q$  be a factorisation such that  $P \rightarrow Q'$  is finitely presented and  $(Q')^{\text{sat}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q$  is an isomorphism. By Proposition 2.2.5 we find finitely presented monoids  $P'_0 \rightarrow Q'_0$  and a map  $P'_0 \rightarrow P$  such that  $Q' = P \oplus_{P'_0} Q'_0$ . The map  $P_0 = (P'_0)^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow Q_0 = (Q'_0)^{\text{sat}}$  is a map of fs monoids by Gordan's Lemma. Since saturation commutes with pushout, we find  $Q = (Q')^{\text{sat}} = (P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$  as requested.

(3)  $\Rightarrow$  (2): By Proposition 2.2.9 the morphism  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  in the diagram in (3) is finitely presented. Hence  $Q_0$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P_0/}$  by Lemma 2.2.2. Since the inclusion  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P_0/} \rightarrow \mathbf{Mon}_{P_0/}$  preserves filtered colimits, its left adjoint functor *saturation* preserves compact objects. Therefore the fs monoid  $Q_0$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P_0/}$ . Base change along  $P_0 \rightarrow P$  preserves compact objects and so shows (2).

Although (1)  $\Rightarrow$  (4) is obvious, we include a proof of (2)  $\Rightarrow$  (4) because this serves as the first part of our proof of (2)  $\Rightarrow$  (1).

(2)  $\Rightarrow$  (4): For any finite set  $S \subseteq Q$  we denote by  $Q(S)_0$  the submonoid of  $Q$  generated by  $S$  over  $P$ , and by  $Q(S) = Q(S)_0^{\text{sat}}$  its saturation. Note that  $Q(S)_0$  is integral by definition and that  $Q(S) \rightarrow Q$  is injective. Then clearly

$$Q = \varinjlim_S Q(S)$$

as a colimit of saturations of monoids finitely generated over  $P$ . As  $P \rightarrow Q$  is a compact object, we have

$$\text{Hom}_P(Q, \varinjlim_S Q(S)) = \varinjlim_S \text{Hom}_P(Q, Q(S)).$$

Therefore, the identity  $\text{id}_Q$  lifts to a morphism  $Q \rightarrow Q(S)$  for large enough  $S$ . It follows that the injective map  $Q(S) \rightarrow Q$  is an isomorphism, i.e.  $S$  sat-generates  $Q$  over  $P$ .

(2)  $\Rightarrow$  (1): We already know that  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sft by the proof of (2)  $\Rightarrow$  (4) above. Pick any finite sat-generating set  $S$  of  $Q$  over  $P$ , and consider the kernel congruence  $E \subseteq (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)^2$  of the morphism

$$P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S \rightarrow Q, \quad (p, n) \mapsto p + \sum_{s \in S} n_s s.$$

with image  $Q_0 = (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)/E$ . For any finite subset  $R \subseteq E$  we denote by  $Q_R$  the saturation of the quotient

$$Q_{R,0} = (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)/R.$$

It follows that

$$\varinjlim_R Q_R = (\varinjlim_R Q_{R,0})^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow Q_0^{\text{sat}} = Q$$

is an isomorphism over  $P$ . Again, by  $Q$  being a compact object over  $P$ , we have

$$\text{Hom}_P(Q, \varinjlim_R Q_R) = \varinjlim_R \text{Hom}_P(Q, Q_R)$$

so again the identity  $\text{id}_Q$  lifts to a map  $\iota: Q \rightarrow Q_R$ .

As for  $R \subseteq R'$  the map  $Q_{R,0} \rightarrow Q_{R',0}$  is surjective, also the map  $Q_R^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_{R'}^{\text{gp}}$  is surjective. The filtered colimit of finitely generated abelian groups and surjective transition maps

$$\varinjlim_R (Q_R^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}) = (\varinjlim_R Q_R)^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}} = Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}$$

becomes constant for  $R \gg 0$ , because  $\mathbb{Z}$  is a noetherian ring.

We choose  $R$  large enough so that both properties hold:  $Q_R^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}$  is an isomorphism and  $\text{id}_Q$  lifts to  $\iota: Q \rightarrow Q_R$  over  $P$ , i.e. splitting the natural map  $r: Q_R \rightarrow Q$ . The restrictions of  $r^{\text{gp}}$  and  $\iota^{\text{gp}}$  to the images of  $P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$  and  $P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_R^{\text{gp}}$  are mutually inverse isomorphisms (since  $\iota^{\text{gp}}$  is injective). By the 5-lemma we conclude that  $r^{\text{gp}}: Q_R^{\text{gp}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q^{\text{gp}}$  is an

isomorphism and this shows that the map  $r: Q_R \rightarrow Q$  is injective. As a retract map,  $r$  is also surjective. Now  $P \rightarrow Q_R = Q$  is sfp by construction, and this concludes the proof of (1).

We now assume that  $P \rightarrow Q$  is injective.

(4)  $\Rightarrow$  (1): Let  $S$  be a finite sat-generating set of  $Q$  over  $P$ . The morphism  $P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S \rightarrow Q$  induces a surjection

$$P^{\text{gp}} \oplus \mathbb{Z}^S \twoheadrightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$$

with kernel  $K$ . By assumption  $P \rightarrow Q$  is injective, and, by Lemma 2.1.1, also  $P^{\text{gp}} \hookrightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$  is injective. Hence the second projection induces an injective map  $K \hookrightarrow \mathbb{Z}^S$ . Thus  $K$  is a finitely generated abelian group.

Let  $f_i - g_i \in K$ , for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  be generators of  $K$  with  $f_i, g_i \in P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S$ . Using

$$R = \{(f_i, g_i) ; i = 1, \dots, n\}$$

we define the monoid

$$Q' = (P \oplus \mathbb{N}^S)/R$$

which is finitely presented over  $P$  by construction. Since  $Q$  is saturated, the relations  $R$  hold in  $Q$  and we obtain an induced morphism  $Q' \rightarrow Q$ . Then

$$Q'^{\text{gp}} = (P^{\text{gp}} \oplus \mathbb{Z}^S)/K \xrightarrow{\sim} Q^{\text{gp}}.$$

Therefore the natural map  $(Q')^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow Q$  is injective, and it is surjective because the image contains  $S$ . This shows that  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sfp.  $\square$

**Remark 2.2.11.** The reader may have noticed that the description of compact objects in  $\mathbf{Mon}/P$  as the finitely presented morphisms (Lemma 2.2.2) was much easier to obtain than the corresponding statement about compact objects in  $\mathbf{Sat}/P$  being precisely the sfp morphisms (Proposition 2.2.10). The intuitive reason for this is that saturated monoids do not form an “algebraic theory” (more precisely, an *equational class* or a *variety* in the sense of universal algebra), as the saturation axioms contain an existential quantifier. Trying to deduce the statement about compact objects in  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P/}$  from the one about compact objects in  $\mathbf{Mon}_{P/}$  using the natural adjunction between the two categories, one can completely formally obtain the following statement:  $Q$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P/}$  if and only if  $Q$  is a *retract* of the saturation of a finitely presented monoid over  $P$ . Without arguments as in last step of the proof of Proposition 2.2.10 (2) $\Rightarrow$ (1), employing crucially the noetherianity of  $\mathbb{Z}$ , it is not obvious why we can get rid of the “retract” part.

**Remark 2.2.12.** The proof for (4)  $\Rightarrow$  (1) in Proposition 2.2.10 shares similarities with the proof of [ALPT19, Lemma 2.1.7]: an injective homomorphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  of integral monoids which is of finite type (or, equivalently, of finite type up to integralisation) is of finite presentation up to integralisation (ifp). This is an instance of the parallel story of notions based on integral monoids and integralisation rather than saturated monoids and saturation that we remarked in a footnote in the introduction.

**Corollary 2.2.13.** *The composition of sfp morphisms is again sfp.*

*Proof.* Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  and  $Q \rightarrow R$  be sfp morphisms. Then by Proposition 2.2.10 (2)  $R$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Sat}_{Q/}$  and  $Q$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P/}$ . It is formal that then  $R$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Sat}_{P/}$  and hence  $P \rightarrow R$  is an sfp morphism by Proposition 2.2.10.  $\square$

**Corollary 2.2.14.** *The fs monoids are the compact objects of the category of saturated monoids.*

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.2.10, a compact object is the same as a monoid  $P$  with  $0 \rightarrow P$  an sfp morphism. These are precisely the fs monoids.  $\square$

**Corollary 2.2.15.** *Let  $P = \varinjlim_{i \in I} P_i$  be a filtered colimit of saturated monoids.*

- (a) *Let  $0 \in I$  and let  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  and  $P_0 \rightarrow R_0$  be two sfp morphisms. Denote by  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$ ,  $P_i \rightarrow R_i$  ( $i \geq 0$ ),  $P \rightarrow Q$ ,  $P \rightarrow R$  the respective saturated base changes. Then the map*

$$\varinjlim_{i \geq 0} \operatorname{Hom}_{P_i}(Q_i, R_i) \longrightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_P(Q, R)$$

*is bijective.*

- (b) *For every sfp morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$ , there exists an index  $i \in I$  and an sfp morphism  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  fitting into a pushout square*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q_i \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P_i \end{array}$$

*in the category of saturated monoids.*

The above statement can be rephrased as follows. Let  $\mathbf{Sfp}_P$  denote the category of sfp morphisms  $P \rightarrow Q$ . Then saturated base change induces an equivalence of categories

$$\varinjlim \mathbf{Sfp}_{P_i} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sfp}_P.$$

For a variant of this result for integral monoids see [ALPT19, Lemma 2.1.9].

*Proof.* (a): We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \varinjlim_{i \geq 0} \operatorname{Hom}_{P_i}(Q_i, R_i) &= \varinjlim_{i \geq 0} \operatorname{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, R_i) \\ &= \operatorname{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, \varinjlim_{i \geq 0} R_i) = \operatorname{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, R) = \operatorname{Hom}_P(Q, R) \end{aligned}$$

because  $Q_0$  is a compact object in  $\mathbf{Sfp}_{P_0}$  by Proposition 2.2.10 (2).

- (b): By Proposition 2.2.10 we can find a pushout square in the category of saturated monoids

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q' \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P' \end{array}$$

where  $P' \rightarrow Q'$  is a morphism of fs monoids. Since  $P'$  is a compact object in the category of saturated monoids by Corollary 2.2.14, there is an index  $i \in I$  such that  $P' \rightarrow P$  factors through  $P' \rightarrow P_i$ . We denote by  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  the saturated base change of  $P' \rightarrow Q'$  to  $P_i$ . By Proposition 2.2.9 the map  $P' \rightarrow Q'$  is sfp, and  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  is sfp by Lemma 2.2.8. This gives the desired pushout square.  $\square$

**2.3. Faces and prime ideals.** An **ideal** of a monoid  $P$  is a subset  $K \subseteq P$  such that  $P + K = K$ . It is **prime** if  $K \neq P$  and if  $p + p' \in K$  implies that either  $p \in K$  or  $p' \in K$ . The set of prime ideals of  $P$  is denoted by  $\operatorname{Spec}(P)$ . The topology generated by the sets

$$\{K \in \operatorname{Spec}(P) \mid x \notin K\} \quad (x \in P)$$

makes it into a  $T_0$ -space with generic point  $\emptyset$  and unique closed point  $P \setminus P^\times$ .

A **face** of  $P$  is a submonoid  $F \subseteq P$  such that  $p + p' \in F$  implies that  $p \in F$  and  $p' \in F$ . Faces of  $P$  are precisely the complements of its prime ideals. We will often identify  $\operatorname{Spec}(P)$  with the set of faces of  $P$ .

For a face  $F \subseteq P$  of an integral monoid, we define the localization  $P_F$  of  $P$  at  $F$  as

$$P_F = P + F^{\operatorname{gp}} \subseteq P^{\operatorname{gp}},$$

and the quotient  $P/F$  as the quotient monoid

$$P/F = P_F/F^{\text{gp}} = \text{im}(P_F \rightarrow P^{\text{gp}}/F^{\text{gp}}).$$

We say that a face  $F$  of  $P$  is **generated as a face** by a subset  $S \subseteq F$  if it is the intersection of all faces containing  $S$ . In case  $S$  is finite, we may replace  $S$  with the sum  $s$  of all of its elements, and then the face generated by  $S$  is

$$F = \{x \in P \mid \exists y \in P, \exists n \geq 1 : x + y = ns\}.$$

**Remark 2.3.1.** For an integral monoid  $P$ , the saturation map  $P \rightarrow P^{\text{sat}}$  induces a bijection  $\text{Spec}(P^{\text{sat}}) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(P)$ . The inverse assigns to a face  $F$  of  $P$  the face generated by  $F$  in  $P^{\text{sat}}$ .

**Lemma 2.3.2.** Let  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  be a homomorphism of saturated monoids, let  $F$  be a face of  $Q$ , and let  $S \subseteq Q$  be a sat-generating set relative to  $P$ . Then,  $F$  equals the saturation of the submonoid of  $Q$  generated by  $F \cap \vartheta(P)$  and  $F \cap S$ .

In particular, if  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sft, then the map of faces  $\vartheta^{-1}(F) \rightarrow F$  is sft.

*Proof.* By definition of a sat-generating set, for an element  $q \in Q$ , there exists an  $n \geq 1$  and an equation of the form

$$nq = \vartheta(p) + \sum_{s \in S} m_s \cdot s$$

for some  $p \in P$  and a function  $m: S \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  with finite support. Suppose that  $q \in F$ . By definition of a face, it follows that  $\vartheta(p) \in F$  and  $s \in F$  for every  $s \in S$  such that  $m_s > 0$ . We thus have written  $nq$  as a combination of elements in  $F \cap \vartheta(P)$  and  $F \cap S$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 2.3.3.** Let  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  be an sft map. Then the fibres of the map  $\text{Spec}(Q) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(P)$  are finite with cardinality bounded by  $2^{\#S}$  with the size  $\#S$  of any sat-generating set  $S$  relative to  $P$ . In particular, if  $P$  has finitely many faces, then so does  $Q$ .

*Proof.* Lemma 2.3.2 shows that faces  $F \subseteq Q$  with given face  $\vartheta^{-1}(F)$  are uniquely determined by the subset  $F \cap S$ .  $\square$

**2.4. Elementary studies of certain classes of morphisms.** We first recall the definition of some classical notions for morphisms of monoids.

**Definition 2.4.1.** A homomorphism  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  of integral monoids is

- (a) **exact** [Ogu18, Definition I 2.1.15] if the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & Q \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ P^{\text{gp}} & \longrightarrow & Q^{\text{gp}} \end{array}$$

is cartesian, or equivalently if  $P = (\vartheta^{\text{gp}})^{-1}(Q)$ ,

- (b) **integral** [Ogu18, Definition I 4.6.2] if for every homomorphism  $P \rightarrow P'$  into an integral monoid  $P'$ , we have

$$P' \oplus_P Q = (P' \oplus_P Q)^{\text{int}},$$

- (c) **saturated** [Tsu19, Definition 3.12 and Proposition 3.14] if  $P \rightarrow Q$  is integral,  $P$  and  $Q$  are saturated, and for every homomorphism  $P \rightarrow P'$  into a saturated monoid  $P'$ , we have

$$P' \oplus_P Q = (P' \oplus_P Q)^{\text{sat}},$$

- (d) **vertical** if the image of  $P$  generates  $Q$  as a face: for every  $q \in Q$  there exist  $q' \in Q$  and  $p \in P$  such that  $q + q' = \vartheta(p)$ , or equivalently if  $Q$  and  $-\vartheta(P)$  generate  $Q^{\text{gp}}$ .



- Remarks 2.4.2.** (1) An often useful fact about exact morphisms  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  is that providing a section of  $\vartheta$  is equivalent to providing a section of  $\vartheta^{\text{gp}}: P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$ .
- (2) The class of exact morphisms is closed under composition, integral pushout and, if  $P$  and  $Q$  are saturated, saturated pushout [Ogu18, Proposition I 4.2.1].
- (3) The class of integral (resp. saturated) morphisms is closed under composition, integral (resp. saturated) pushout.
- (4) The class of vertical morphisms is closed under composition and integral pushout. Moreover, if  $P$  and  $Q$  are saturated, then being vertical is also stable under saturated pushout [Ogu18, Proposition I 4.3.3].

**Example 2.4.3.** The class of integral morphisms is in general not preserved by saturated pushout. We learned this from Arthur Ogus with essentially the following example. Consider the morphism  $\vartheta_0: \mathbb{N}^2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}^2$  which is integral e.g. by [Ogu18, Proposition I 4.6.7]. Let  $P \subseteq \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}^2$  be the submonoid generated by  $\mathbb{N}^2$  and  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ . Consider the saturated base change

$$\vartheta: P \longrightarrow Q = (P \oplus_{\mathbb{N}^2} \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}^2)^{\text{sat}}$$

of  $\vartheta_0$  along the inclusion  $\mathbb{N}^2 \rightarrow P$ . Then  $Q \simeq \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}^2 \times \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$  with  $\vartheta(P)$  contained in the first factor. The morphism  $\vartheta$  is not integral as can easily be verified by computing the base change in monoids with the “sum of the coordinates” map  $P \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}$ .

We shall now use the notion of an sfp map to define smooth, étale, and Kummer étale maps between saturated monoids. These definitions are motivated by the classical notions in log geometry.

**Definition 2.4.4.** Henceforth, we fix a possibly empty set of primes  $\Sigma$  and set

$$p = \prod_{\ell \in \Sigma} \ell$$

as a supernatural number (formal product). In the applications the set  $\Sigma$  will be clear out of context, so we drop it in the notation.

A morphism of saturated monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  is

- (1) **smooth** if it is sfp and the kernel and the torsion part of the cokernel of  $P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$  are finite groups of order prime to  $p$ ,
- (2) **étale** if it is smooth and the cokernel of  $P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$  is torsion,
- (3) **Kummer étale** if it is injective, étale, and exact.

**Example 2.4.5** (“Semistable reduction”). Let  $P$  be a saturated monoid, let  $\pi \in P$ , and let  $n \geq 0$ . Define

$$P_n(\pi) = P[e_1, \dots, e_n] / (e_1 + \dots + e_n = \pi)$$

as the quotient of  $P \oplus \mathbb{N}^n$  by the congruence relation generated by  $(\pi, 0) \sim (0, (1, \dots, 1))$ . Then  $P_n(\pi)$  is saturated and  $P \rightarrow P_n(\pi)$  is smooth, vertical, and saturated. In the case  $P = \mathbb{N}$  and  $\pi = 1$ , these assertions are classical: the first three follow directly from the definitions. That the morphism is saturated follows from the characterization of [Tsu19, Theorem I.6.3(8)] (use [Tsu19, Theorem I.2.1] first to check that the morphism is integral): for any field  $k$ , the morphism

$$\mathbb{A}_{P_n[\pi]} = \text{Spec}(k[t][x_1, \dots, x_n] / (x_1 \dots x_n - t)) \longrightarrow \text{Spec}(k[t]) = \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{N}}$$

is flat and has reduced special fibre. The general case follows by base change along the map  $\mathbb{N} \rightarrow P$  sending 1 to  $\pi$ , see [Ogu18, Example IV 3.1.17].

**Lemma 2.4.6.** *Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be one of the properties: smooth, étale, injective, Kummer étale. Then the saturated base change of a morphism with property  $\mathcal{P}$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  and  $P_0 \rightarrow P$  be morphisms of saturated monoids. We set

$$Q = (P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$$

for the saturated pushout. Recall from Lemma 2.1.2 that  $Q_0^{\text{gp}}/P_0^{\text{gp}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}$  is an isomorphism and the morphism  $\ker(P_0^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_0^{\text{gp}}) \rightarrow \ker(P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}})$  is surjective.

As being sfp is stable under saturated base change by Lemma 2.2.8, clearly smooth and étale are also stable under saturated base change. The claim for injective follows because by Lemma 2.1.1, the map  $P \rightarrow Q$  is injective if and only if  $P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{gp}}$  is injective. Now Kummer étale follows as well being defined as the combination of base change stable properties (for “exact” see Remark 2.4.2(2)).  $\square$

**Proposition 2.4.7.** *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be an sfp morphism of saturated monoids and let  $\mathcal{P}$  be one of the following properties: smooth, étale, injective, exact, vertical, Kummer étale. Then  $P \rightarrow Q$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$  if and only if there exists a morphism of fs monoids  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  with property  $\mathcal{P}$  and a map  $P_0 \rightarrow P$  such that  $Q = (P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$ .*

*Proof.* If such a map  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  with property  $\mathcal{P}$  as in the lemma exists, then  $P \rightarrow Q$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$  by Remarks 2.4.2 and Lemma 2.4.6.

For the converse direction we assume that  $P \rightarrow Q$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$ . Let  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  be a morphism of fs monoids with  $Q = (P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$  as in Proposition 2.2.10 (3). We write  $P = \varinjlim_i P_i$  as a filtered colimit of fs monoids over  $P_0$ , namely the saturations of submonoids that are finitely generated over  $P_0$ . We set  $Q_i = (P_i \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$  which yields  $Q = \varinjlim_i Q_i$  as a filtered colimit of fs monoids. Moreover, by possibly replacing  $P_0$  by one of the  $P_i$  and the system by all  $P_j$  with  $j \geq i$ , we may and do assume that all  $P_i$  are submonoids of  $P$ : the transfer maps in  $P = \varinjlim_i P_i$  are injective. We abbreviate

$$K_i = \ker(P_i^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_i^{\text{gp}}) \quad \text{and} \quad C_i = \text{coker}(P_i^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_i^{\text{gp}}).$$

For  $j \geq i$ , transitivity of pushouts yields  $Q_j = (P_j \oplus_{P_i} Q_i)^{\text{sat}}$ . We apply Lemma 2.1.2 and obtain isomorphisms  $C_i \xrightarrow{\sim} C_j$  and  $K_i \xrightarrow{\sim} K_j$  because by construction  $P_i^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow P_j^{\text{gp}}$  is injective as subgroups of  $P^{\text{gp}}$ .

Since groupification commutes with colimits and filtered colimits are exact, we find an exact complex

$$0 \longrightarrow \varinjlim_i K_i \longrightarrow P^{\text{gp}} \longrightarrow Q^{\text{gp}} \longrightarrow \varinjlim_i C_i \longrightarrow 0.$$

This shows that all maps  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  and  $P \rightarrow Q$  have isomorphic kernels and cokernels of their groupification. Being sfp as maps between fs monoids by Proposition 2.2.10 (3), we deduce that  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$  for  $\mathcal{P}$  equal to: smooth, étale, injective. It remains to argue for  $\mathcal{P}$  equal to exact and  $\mathcal{P}$  equal to vertical.

Suppose that  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  is exact. For all  $i$  we set  $P'_i = P_i^{\text{gp}} \times_{Q_i^{\text{gp}}} Q_i$ . This is an fs monoid, being the preimage of the fs monoid  $Q_i$  under the homomorphism of finitely generated abelian groups  $P_i^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow Q_i^{\text{gp}}$ . Moreover, since  $P \rightarrow Q$  is exact, we obtain the factorisation  $P_i \rightarrow P'_i \rightarrow P$ . In the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q_i & \xleftarrow{\sim} & Q_i \\ \vartheta \uparrow & & \vartheta'_i \uparrow & & \vartheta_i \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P'_i & \longleftarrow & P_i \end{array}$$

both the outer rectangle and the right square are pushout diagrams of saturated monoids. Indeed, the saturated pushout  $P'_i \oplus_{P_i}^{\text{sat}} Q_i$  is the saturation in  $Q_i^{\text{gp}} = P_i^{\text{gp}} \oplus_{P_i^{\text{gp}}} Q_i^{\text{gp}}$  of the submonoid generated by  $Q_i$  and  $P'_i$ , and this is still only  $Q_i$ . Hence also the left square is a pushout diagram of saturated monoids. So  $\vartheta$  is the saturated base change of the exact map  $\vartheta'_i: P'_i \rightarrow Q_i$ .

Finally, suppose that  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  is vertical. Let  $S$  be a finite sat-generating set for  $Q$  over  $P$ . Then  $\vartheta$  is vertical if and only if for every  $s \in S$  there exist  $q_s \in Q$  and  $p_s \in P$  such that

$$s + q_s = \vartheta(p_s).$$

We may assume that  $S$  is the image of a finite sat-generating set  $S_i$  of  $Q_i$  over  $P_i$ . Increasing  $i$ , we may ensure the existence of elements  $q'_r \in Q_i$  and  $p'_r \in P_i$  (for  $r \in S_i$ ) such that  $r + q'_r = \vartheta_i(p'_r)$ . This implies that  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  is vertical.  $\square$

Combining this with Corollary 2.2.15, we obtain the following results.

**Proposition 2.4.8.** *Let  $P = \varinjlim_{i \in I} P_i$  be a filtered colimit of saturated monoids, let  $0 \in I$  be the smallest element, let  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  be an sfp map, and let  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  ( $i \geq 0$ ) and  $P \rightarrow Q$  be obtained by saturated base change. Then  $P \rightarrow Q$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$  (as in Proposition 2.4.7) if and only if  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$  for  $i \gg 0$ .*

*Proof.* The “if” part follows from Remarks 2.4.2 and Lemma 2.4.6. For the converse, suppose that  $P \rightarrow Q$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$ . By Proposition 2.4.7, we find a cocartesian square in the category of saturated monoids

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q' \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P' \end{array}$$

with  $P' \rightarrow Q'$  a morphism of fs monoids which has property  $\mathcal{P}$ . Since  $P'$  is a compact object in the category of saturated monoids, the map  $P' \rightarrow P$  factors through  $P_{i_0}$  for  $i_0 \gg 0$ . Fix such a factorisation, and for  $i \geq i_0$ , let  $Q'_i = (Q' \oplus_{P'} P_i)^{\text{sat}}$ . Then by Remarks 2.4.2 and Lemma 2.4.6, the maps  $P_i \rightarrow Q'_i$  have property  $\mathcal{P}$ . By Corollary 2.2.15, for  $i \gg i_0$  we have  $Q_i \simeq Q'_i$  over  $P_i$ , and hence for such  $i$ , the map  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  has property  $\mathcal{P}$  as well.  $\square$

**Corollary 2.4.9.** *In the situation of Proposition 2.4.8, the category of smooth, étale, or Kummer étale maps  $P \rightarrow Q$  is equivalent to the filtered colimit of the categories of maps  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  with the same property.*

**2.5. Monoids of type (V) and of type ( $V_{\text{div}}$ ).** Using the notion of an sfp map, we shall now define monoids of type (V) (resp. type ( $V_{\text{div}}$ )) as those which are sfp over a valutive monoid (resp. divisible valutive monoid). The two assumptions valutive and divisible for the base monoid enable us to apply the results of F. Kato (Theorem 2.5.6) and T. Tsuji (Theorem 2.5.14).

**Valutive monoids.** Recall that a commutative monoid  $V$  is **valutive** if it is integral and for every  $x \in V^{\text{gp}}$ , either  $x \in V$  or  $-x \in V$ , see [Ogu18, I §1.3]. For example, if  $K^+$  is a valuation ring with fraction field  $K$ , then the monoid  $K^+ \setminus \{0\}$  as well as the monoid  $\Gamma_K^+ = (K^+ \setminus \{0\})/(K^+)^{\times}$  of non-negative elements in its value group  $\Gamma_K = K^{\times}/(K^+)^{\times}$  are valutive monoids. If  $\Gamma$  is a totally ordered abelian group, then its submonoid  $\Gamma^+$  of non-negative elements is sharp and valutive, and conversely the groupification  $V^{\text{gp}}$  of a sharp valutive monoid  $V$  is totally ordered by  $x \geq y$  if  $x - y \in V$ . A valutive monoid is automatically saturated, but it will typically not be finitely generated (the only sharp valutive fs monoids are 0 and  $\mathbb{N}$ ).

**Definition, basic properties, and examples.** We will call a saturated monoid  $P$  **divisible** if for every  $n \geq 1$ , the multiplication by  $n$  map  $n: P \rightarrow P$  is surjective, or equivalently if  $P^{\text{gp}}$  is a divisible group.

**Definition 2.5.1.** A saturated monoid  $Q$  is of **type (V)** (resp. **of type ( $V_{\text{div}}$ )**) if there exists a valutive monoid  $V$  (resp. a divisible valutive monoid  $V$ ) and an sfp map  $V \rightarrow Q$ .

Trivially, if  $Q \rightarrow Q'$  is an sfp map and  $Q$  is of type (V) or ( $V_{\text{div}}$ ) then so is  $Q'$ .

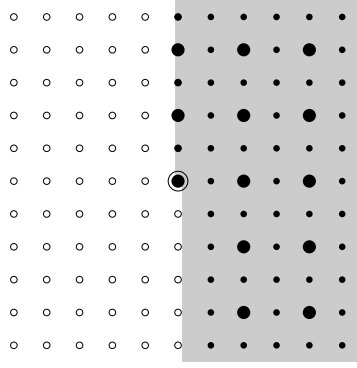


FIGURE 1. The inclusion  $V \subseteq Q$  in Example 2.5.3 (2).

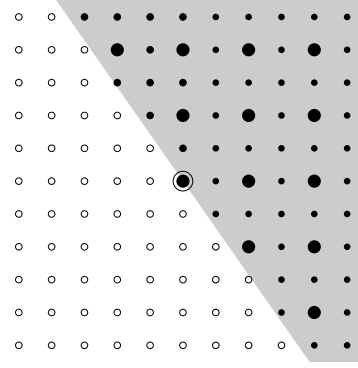


FIGURE 2. The inclusion  $V \subseteq Q$  in Example 2.5.3 (3).

**Remark 2.5.2.** Every homomorphism from a valutive monoid  $V$  to an integral monoid  $Q$  is integral by [Ogu18, Proposition I 4.6.3(5)]. In particular, any  $V \rightarrow Q$  as in Definition 2.5.1 is integral as well.

**Example 2.5.3.** We illustrate the notion of a monoid of type (V), especially the flexibility arising since the monoid  $V$  itself is not fixed as part of the structure.

- (1) Every fs monoid is of type  $(V_{\text{div}})$ , simply over the trivial valutive monoid  $V = 0$ .
- (2) It is not true in general that if  $V \rightarrow Q$  is sfp and  $V$  is valutive then  $Q$  is finitely generated over  $V$ . For example, let  $V = (\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z})^+$  be the non-negative elements in  $\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}$  with lexicographical ordering, i.e.

$$V = (\mathbb{N}_{>0} \times \mathbb{Z}) + (0 \times \mathbb{N}) \subseteq \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{Z} \subseteq V^{\text{gp}} = \mathbb{Z}^2$$

and let

$$Q = \frac{1}{2}V \subseteq \mathbb{Q}^2$$

(see Fig. 1, in which the smaller dots are in  $Q$  and the larger ones are in  $V$ ). Then  $Q$  is sat-generated over  $V$  by  $\{(\frac{1}{2}, 0), (0, \frac{1}{2})\}$ , and hence sft and even sfp by Proposition 2.2.10. Even more,  $V \rightarrow Q$  is Kummer étale (for  $\Sigma = \{2\}$ ). But any set of generators of  $Q$  over  $V$  has to contain an infinite subset of the elements  $\frac{1}{2} \times (-\mathbb{N})$ . However, in this example  $Q$  is finitely generated over a valutive monoid (namely, over itself), so in particular  $Q$  is of type (V). See Example 4.4.6 for a related example in log schemes.

- (3) For a similar example with a valutive monoid of rank one, let  $\lambda$  be an irrational real number and let

$$V = \{(a, b) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 : a + b\lambda \geq 0\},$$

which is identified with a dense submonoid of  $\mathbb{R}^+$  via  $(a, b) \mapsto a + b\lambda$ . Again, set  $Q = \frac{1}{2}V \subseteq \mathbb{Q}^2$  (see Fig. 2, in which the smaller dots are in  $Q$  and the larger ones are in  $V$ ). Then  $Q$  is not finitely generated over  $V$ . Indeed, let  $S \subseteq Q$  be a finite subset, and let  $\varepsilon = \inf\{a + b\lambda : (a, b) \in S \setminus \{0\}\} > 0$ . Since  $\lambda$  is irrational, there exists an element  $(a, b) \in Q$  such that  $0 < a + b\lambda < \varepsilon$ . Dividing  $a$  and  $b$  by a power of two, we may assume that  $(a, b) \notin V$ . But then  $(a, b)$  does not belong to the submonoid of  $Q$  generated by  $V$  and  $S$ . We thank Jakub Byszewski for this argument. See Example 4.4.7 for a related example in log schemes.

- (4) In the next example we show that in general a monoid  $Q$  of type (V) need not be finitely generated over a valutive monoid. Consider again  $V = (\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z})^+$  as in (2) and let  $Q$

be the saturation of the submonoid of  $\frac{1}{2}V \oplus \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}$  generated by  $V \oplus \mathbb{N}$  and the element  $(1/2, 0, 1/2)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= ((V \oplus \mathbb{N}) + \mathbb{N} \cdot (\tfrac{1}{2}, 0, \tfrac{1}{2}))^{\text{sat}} \\ &= \{(x, y, z) \in \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{Z} \times \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbb{N} : x - z \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and, if } y < 0, \text{ then } x > 0\}. \end{aligned}$$

The underlying geometric inspiration is as follows: the monoid  $Q$  occurs in the integral closure of the algebra  $R = K^+[T, S]/(S^2 - \pi T)$  in  $R[1/\pi]$  for  $K^+$  a valuation ring with  $\Gamma_K^+ = V$  and  $\pi \in K^+$  an element (pseudouniformizer) with valuation  $(1, 0)$ .

Clearly  $V \rightarrow Q$ , the inclusion of the  $xy$ -plane, is sft by construction and therefore sfp by Proposition 2.2.10. Therefore  $Q$  is a monoid of type (V).

Suppose that there is a valutive monoid  $W$  and a morphism  $\vartheta: W \rightarrow Q$ , such that  $Q$  is finitely generated over  $W$ . We may replace  $W$  by the image of  $W$  in  $Q$ , since this image is still a valutive monoid over which  $Q$  is finitely generated. Suppose that  $W$  is not contained in  $V$ , so that there exists an element  $(\alpha, n) \in W \subseteq \frac{1}{2}V \oplus \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}$  with  $n > 0$ . One of the elements  $(-\alpha, n)$  and  $(\alpha, -n)$  belongs to  $W$ . Since  $n > 0$ , this must be  $(-\alpha, n) \in W$  and thus  $\alpha = 0$ . This shows that  $W \subseteq 0 \times \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $V$  is a face of  $Q$ , any generating set of  $Q$  over  $W$  contains a generating set of  $V$  over  $V \cap W = 0$ . But  $V$  is not a finitely generated monoid, a contradiction. Thus  $W \subseteq V$ .

Now it is enough to show that  $Q$  is not finitely generated over  $V$ . For this, we note that every generating set of  $Q$  over  $V$  must contain infinitely many of the elements

$$q_n = (1/2, -n, 1/2), \quad n \in \mathbb{N},$$

because every decomposition  $q_n = a + b$  in  $Q$  must be of the form  $q_n = q_{n+k} + (0, k, 0)$  with  $k \geq 0$ .

- (5) Not all saturated submonoids of finitely generated groups are of type (V). Take any saturated submonoid  $Q \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^2$  which is not finitely generated and not valutive. Basic examples are given by

$$Q = (\mathbb{N}_{>0} \times \mathbb{N}) \cup \{(0, 0)\} = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{N}^2 \mid x > 0 \text{ if } y > 0\},$$

or a cone with irrational slope such as

$$Q = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{N}^2 : y \leq \sqrt{2}x\}.$$

It is easy to check that  $Q$  is saturated but not fs. If  $V$  is a valutive monoid and  $V \rightarrow Q$  is an sfp homomorphism, then the image of  $V$  in  $Q$  is a valutive monoid over which  $Q$  is sft (see the proof of Proposition 2.5.8). However, the only valutive submonoids of  $Q$  are of the form  $\mathbb{N} \cdot q$  for some  $q \in Q$ , and in particular are fs. Thus, if  $Q$  was sft over  $V$ , it would be fs by Proposition 2.2.9.

In fact, it is very rare that a Kummer étale homomorphism between valutive monoids is of finite type. Let us call a totally ordered abelian group  $\Gamma$  **discrete** if  $\Gamma = 0$  or if  $\Gamma^+ \setminus \{0\}$  has a smallest element  $\gamma$ , or equivalently if its smallest non-zero convex subgroup is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Now, Examples 2.5.3(2) and 2.5.3(3) can be generalized as follows.

**Lemma 2.5.4.** *Let  $\Gamma \rightarrow \Sigma$  be an injective map of totally ordered abelian groups whose cokernel is finite (so that  $\Gamma^+ \rightarrow \Sigma^+$  is Kummer étale with  $p = 1$ ). The following are equivalent:*

- (a)  $\Sigma^+$  is finite as a  $\Gamma^+$ -set,
- (b)  $\Sigma^+$  is finitely generated over  $\Gamma^+$ ,
- (c) either  $\Gamma = \Sigma$ , or  $\Gamma$  is discrete and there exists an integer  $n \geq 1$  such that  $\Sigma = \Gamma + \frac{1}{n}\mathbb{Z}\gamma$  where  $\gamma$  is the smallest positive element of  $\Gamma$ .

*Proof.* The implication (a)  $\Rightarrow$  (b) is clear. For (b)  $\Rightarrow$  (a), if  $S \subseteq \Sigma^+$  is a finite generating set over  $\Gamma^+$ , with  $0 \in S$ , and if  $n \geq 1$  is an integer annihilating  $\Sigma/\Gamma$ , then the finite set of sums

$$\sum_{s \in S} m(s) \cdot s, \quad m: S \longrightarrow \{0, \dots, n-1\}$$

generates  $\Sigma^+$  as a  $\Gamma^+$ -set. For (c)  $\Rightarrow$  (a) we note that  $\Sigma^+$  is generated as a  $\Gamma^+$ -set by the elements  $\frac{i}{n}\gamma$  for  $0 \leq i < n$ . It remains to show (a)  $\Rightarrow$  (c).

We write  $\pi: \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma/\Gamma$  for the quotient map. For every  $t \in \Sigma/\Gamma$ , let  $\Sigma_t^+ = \pi^{-1}(t) \cap \Sigma^+$  be the monoid of non-negative elements of  $\Sigma$  congruent to  $t$  modulo  $\Gamma$ . Then  $\Sigma^+$  decomposes as a  $\Gamma^+$ -set

$$\Sigma^+ = \coprod_{t \in \Sigma/\Gamma} \Sigma_t^+,$$

and hence (a) is equivalent to  $\Sigma_t^+$  being finite as a  $\Gamma^+$ -set for all  $t$ .

We claim that  $\Sigma_t^+$  is finite as a  $\Gamma^+$ -set if and only if it has a smallest element  $\sigma_t$ . The argument for this is similar to the one for the claim that an ideal in a valuation ring is finitely generated if and only if it is principal and will be omitted.

Assume (a), and let  $\sigma_t \in \Sigma_t^+$  be smallest elements as above. Suppose that  $\Sigma \neq \Gamma$ . Let  $\sigma = \sigma_{t_0}$  be the smallest non-zero element among the  $\sigma_t$ , or equivalently the smallest element of  $\Sigma^+ \setminus \Gamma^+ \neq \emptyset$ . Then  $[0, \sigma) \subseteq \Sigma_0^+ = \Gamma^+$ . Suppose that there exists a  $g \in \Gamma$  such that  $0 < g < \sigma$ . Then  $s = \sigma - g$  satisfies  $0 < s < \sigma$ , and moreover  $s \in \Sigma \setminus \Gamma$  since it is congruent to  $\sigma$  modulo  $\Gamma$ . This contradicts the minimality of  $\sigma$ . We conclude that the interval  $(0, \sigma)$  is empty, which means that  $\sigma$  is the smallest non-zero element of  $\Sigma^+$ , and hence  $\Sigma$  (and therefore  $\Gamma$ ) is discrete.

Let  $n \geq 1$  be the smallest integer such that  $n \cdot \sigma \in \Gamma$ . Then  $\gamma = n \cdot \sigma$  is the smallest element of  $\Gamma$ . We claim that  $\Sigma = \Gamma + \mathbb{Z}\sigma$ , which will imply the final assertion of (c). The injective map  $\Gamma' = \Gamma + \mathbb{Z}\sigma \rightarrow \Sigma$  satisfies the assumptions of the lemma and (a). Since  $\Gamma'$  and  $\Sigma$  have the same smallest positive element, namely  $\sigma$ , the argument in the previous paragraph shows that  $\Gamma' = \Sigma$ .  $\square$

**F. Kato's theorem and its corollaries.** For the results below, we recall the definition of the (saturated) affine blowup (or dilatation) of a monoid, see [Kat22, §3]. Let  $P$  be a saturated monoid,  $K \subseteq P$  an ideal, and  $a \in K$  an element. We denote by  $P[K - a]$  the saturation of the submonoid of  $P^{\text{gp}}$  generated by  $P$  and  $K - a$ . It is fs if  $P$  is. The map

$$P \longrightarrow P[K - a]$$

is called an **affine blow-up** map. Note that the log schemes  $\mathbb{A}_{P[K-a]}$ , for  $a \in K$ , form the standard affine cover of the (saturated) log blow-up  $\text{Bl}_K(\mathbb{A}_P)$ . This explains the name of the following result.

**Lemma 2.5.5** (Valuative property of log blowups). *Let  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow V$  be a homomorphism of saturated monoids, with  $V$  valuative, and let  $K \subseteq P$  be a non-empty finitely generated ideal. Then there exists an  $a \in K$  and a factorisation*

$$P \longrightarrow P[K - a] \longrightarrow V.$$

*Proof.* Let  $S \subseteq K$  be a finite set generating  $K$  as an ideal. The map  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow V$  induces a linear preorder on  $S$ :  $p \geq p'$  if  $\vartheta(p) - \vartheta(p') \in V$ . Let  $a \in S$  be an element which is minimal with respect to this preorder. The map  $P^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow V^{\text{gp}}$  sends an element of the form  $p - a$ , for  $p \in K = P + S$ , to  $\vartheta(p) - \vartheta(a) \in V$ . This implies that it sends  $P[K - a]$  into  $V$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 2.5.6** (F. Kato [Kat22, Theorem 1.1]). *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be a homomorphism of fs monoids. Then there exists a non-empty ideal  $K \subseteq P$  such that for every  $a \in K$ , the induced map*

$$P[K - a] \longrightarrow (Q \oplus_P P[K - a])^{\text{sat}}$$



is integral<sup>2</sup> (Definition 2.4.1 (b)).

In fact, [Kat22, Theorem 1.1] is the log scheme version of the above result. We will deduce Theorem 2.5.6 from the proof of [Kat22, Theorem 1.1]. Given the relationship between integrality and flatness (see the proof below), we can regard Theorem 2.5.6 as a monoid analog of the Raynaud–Gruson “flattening by blow-up” theorem [RG71].

*Proof.* The proof of [Kat22, Theorem 1.1] applied to the map of log schemes  $\mathbb{A}_Q \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  constructs a non-empty ideal  $K \subseteq P$  such that the morphism of schemes

$$\mathbb{A}_Q \times_{\mathbb{A}_P}^{\text{sat}} \text{Bl}_K \mathbb{A}_P \longrightarrow \text{Bl}_K \mathbb{A}_P$$

is flat. This implies that for every  $a \in K$ , setting  $P' = P[K - a]$  to be the affine blow-up monoid and  $Q' = (P' \oplus_P Q)^{\text{sat}}$ , the ring homomorphism

$$\mathbb{Z}[P'] \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}[Q']$$

is flat. This implies that  $P' \rightarrow Q'$  is integral by [Ogu18, Proposition I 4.6.7 (2) $\Rightarrow$ (1)].  $\square$

**Corollary 2.5.7.** *Let  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  be a homomorphism of fs monoids and let  $P_0 \rightarrow V$  be a map into a valutive monoid  $V$ . Then there exists a factorisation  $P_0 \rightarrow P_1 \rightarrow V$  where  $P_0 \rightarrow P_1$  is an affine blow-up  $P_0[K - a]$  for some non-empty ideal  $K \subseteq P_0$  and element  $a \in K$  such that the saturated base change  $P_1 \rightarrow Q_1 = (P_1 \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$  is an integral homomorphism.*

*Proof.* Combine Theorem 2.5.6 with Lemma 2.5.5.  $\square$

**Proposition 2.5.8.** *Let  $P$  be a saturated monoid. The following are equivalent:*

- (a)  $P$  is sft over a valutive submonoid  $V \subseteq P$ ,
- (b)  $P$  is sfp over a valutive submonoid  $V \subseteq P$ ,
- (c)  $P$  is of type (V),
- (d) there is a valutive monoid  $V'$  and an sft morphism  $V' \rightarrow P$ .

*In fact, the monoid  $V$  can be taken to be the image of the morphism  $V' \rightarrow P$  that is explicit in (d) and implicit in (c).*

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.2.10 (4)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (1) we have that (a) $\Leftrightarrow$ (b), and trivially (b) $\Rightarrow$ (c) $\Rightarrow$ (d). To show that (d) implies (a) let  $V$  be the image of  $V'$  in  $P$ . It is easy to check that  $V$  is valutive. Let  $S \subseteq P$  be a finite sat-generating set of  $P$  over  $V'$ . Then  $S$  is also a finite sat-generating set for  $P$  over  $V$ . This shows that  $V \rightarrow P$  is sft.  $\square$

**Corollary 2.5.9** (Analogue of Nagata’s theorem). *Let  $V$  be a valutive monoid and let  $V \rightarrow P$  be an injective homomorphism into a saturated monoid  $P$  which is finitely generated over  $V$ . Then  $P$  is finitely presented over  $V$ .*

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.2.10 the morphism  $V \rightarrow P$  is sfp. We may write  $V = \varinjlim V_i$  as a filtered colimit of fs monoids. Thanks to Corollary 2.2.15 we may assume to have a compatible colimit  $P = \varinjlim P_i$  such that  $V_i \rightarrow P_i$  is sfp and  $P_j \simeq (P_i \oplus_{V_i} V_j)^{\text{sat}}$  for  $j \geq i$ . This means  $P_i$  is fs and the map  $V_i \rightarrow P_i$  is finitely presented. By Corollary 2.5.7, for large enough  $i$ , the morphism  $V_i \rightarrow P_i$  is integral. But then  $P' = V \oplus_{V_i} P_i$  is integral, so that  $P' \rightarrow P$  is injective. Moreover,  $P' = V \oplus_{V_j} P_j$  for all  $j \geq i$ .

Let  $S \subseteq P$  be a finite set generating  $P$  as a monoid over  $V$ . As  $P = \varinjlim P_j$ , the set  $S$  is contained in the image of  $P_j \rightarrow P'$  for large enough  $j$ . In this case the map  $P' \rightarrow P$  is an isomorphism, showing that  $P$  is finitely presented over  $V$ .  $\square$

<sup>2</sup>Warning: the theorem involves saturated pushouts and integral morphisms. However, as we have already remarked in Example 2.4.3, integral morphisms are in general not stable under saturated pushout. Therefore taking a further saturated blowup may destroy integrality of the morphism.

**Remark 2.5.10.** Corollary 2.5.9 is a monoid version of the result of Nagata (see [Nag66], [SP, Lemma 053E]): a finitely generated and flat (equivalently, torsion free) algebra over a valuation ring is automatically finitely presented.

It is plausible that using [ALPT19, Lemmas 2.1.7 and 2.1.9] one could show an integral version of Corollary 2.5.9, i.e. that if  $V$  is valutive and  $V \rightarrow P$  is an injective homomorphism into an integral monoid  $P$  which is finitely generated over  $V$ , then  $P$  is finitely presented over  $V$ . However, it seems that this would require a version of Theorem 2.5.6 employing un-saturated log blow-ups.

A proof of the (largely folklore) result below, a monoid analogue of Néron desingularisation, can be found in [GR03, Theorem 6.1.31]. It is not used later on but recorded here to shed some light on valutive monoids. We present a shorter proof than the one in [GR03], based on toric resolution of singularities<sup>3</sup>. Let us call a finitely generated monoid  $P$  **quasi-free** if it is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{N}^r \times G$  where  $r \geq 0$  and where  $G$  is an abelian group. This is equivalent to  $\text{Spec}(\mathbb{C}[P])$  being smooth over  $\mathbb{C}$  (see e.g. [Ful93, §2.1, Proposition on p. 29]).

**Proposition 2.5.11.** *Let  $V$  be a valutive monoid. Then  $V$  is the increasing union of its quasi-free submonoids. In particular, if  $V$  is sharp, then  $V$  is the increasing union of its free submonoids.*

*Proof.* Let  $P \subseteq V$  be a finitely generated submonoid. We shall find a quasi-free submonoid  $Q \subseteq V$  containing  $P$ .

To this end, we may replace  $P$  with its saturation and  $V$  with  $V \cap P^{\text{gp}}$  and hence assume that  $P$  is fs and  $V^{\text{gp}} = P^{\text{gp}}$ . Now, if  $Q'$  is a free submonoid of  $\bar{V}$  containing the image  $\bar{P}$  of  $P$ , then its preimage  $Q \subseteq V$  is a quasi-free submonoid containing  $P$ . We may therefore assume that  $V$  (and hence also  $P$ ) is sharp.

By toric resolution of singularities<sup>4</sup> [Niz06] there exists a non-empty ideal

$$K = (a_1, \dots, a_n) \subseteq P$$

such that the blow-up of  $\text{Spec}(\mathbb{C}[P])$  along  $V(K)$  is smooth, and hence the union of  $\text{Spec}(\mathbb{C}[Q_i])$  for a finite number of quasi-free monoids  $Q_i = P[K - a_i]$  with  $P \subseteq Q_i \subseteq P^{\text{gp}}$ . By Lemma 2.5.5, this implies that there exists an element  $a \in K$  such that  $Q = P[K - a]$  is quasi-free and a factorisation

$$P \longrightarrow Q \longrightarrow V,$$

and since  $Q^{\text{gp}} = P^{\text{gp}} = V^{\text{gp}}$ , the map  $Q \rightarrow V$  is injective.  $\square$

**Tsuji's theorem and its corollaries.** To state Tsuji's result we need some terminology. Let  $P$  be an fs monoid and  $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq P$  a prime ideal of height one, with  $F = P \setminus \mathfrak{p}$  the corresponding face. Then  $P/F = \mathbb{N}$  (this is a canonical isomorphism as  $\mathbb{N}$  has no automorphisms), and the induced function  $v_{\mathfrak{p}}: P \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is the **valuation along  $\mathfrak{p}$** . Given a map of fs monoids  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  and a prime  $\mathfrak{q} \subseteq Q$  of height one whose preimage  $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq P$  is also of height one, there exists a unique integer  $e_{\mathfrak{q}} \geq 1$  such that  $v_{\mathfrak{q}} \circ \vartheta = e_{\mathfrak{q}} \cdot v_{\mathfrak{p}}$ , called the **ramification index** of  $\vartheta$  at  $\mathfrak{q}$ .

We first show that étale maps are “tamely ramified” in prime ideals of height 1, i.e. the respective ramification index is prime to  $p$ .

**Lemma 2.5.12.** *The ramification indices of an étale map  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  are prime to  $p$ .*

<sup>3</sup>We thank Jarek Buczyński for help with the proof of this proposition.

<sup>4</sup>The original reference [KKMSD73, Theorem 11] would work too, except that it does not assert the constructed resolution is a blow-up, so that we cannot apply Lemma 2.5.5 but would need a version of it for a “proper” morphism of fans.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{q} \subseteq Q$  be a prime ideal of height one such that  $\mathfrak{p} = \vartheta^{-1}(\mathfrak{q})$  is also of height one. From the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} P^{\text{gp}} & \xrightarrow{\vartheta^{\text{gp}}} & Q^{\text{gp}} & \longrightarrow & Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}} & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ v_{\mathfrak{p}} \downarrow & & \downarrow v_{\mathfrak{q}} & & \downarrow & & \\ \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{e_{\mathfrak{q}}} & \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}/e_{\mathfrak{q}}\mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array}$$

we deduce that the finite group  $Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}$  of order prime to  $p$  surjects onto  $\mathbb{Z}/e_{\mathfrak{q}}\mathbb{Z}$  and hence  $e_{\mathfrak{q}}$  is prime to  $p$  as well.  $\square$

**Remark 2.5.13.** The assertion of Lemma 2.5.12 is false for smooth maps. For a simple example, let  $P = \mathbb{N} \cdot e_1 \subseteq Q = \langle e_1, e_2, -e_1 + 2e_2 \rangle \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^2$ . Then  $P \rightarrow Q$  is smooth for any  $p$ , but its ramification index along  $\mathfrak{p} = (e_1, e_2)$  is 2.

**Theorem 2.5.14** (T. Tsuji [Tsu19, I 5.4]). *Let  $P_1 \rightarrow Q_1$  be an integral homomorphism of fs monoids and let  $n \geq 1$  be an integer divisible by all of the ramification indices of  $P_1 \rightarrow Q_1$ . Let  $P_2 = P_1$  and let  $P_1 \rightarrow P_2$  be the multiplication by  $n$  map. Then, the saturated base change  $P_2 \rightarrow Q_2 = (P_2 \oplus_{P_1} Q_1)^{\text{sat}}$  is a saturated homomorphism.*

**Corollary 2.5.15.** *Let  $P_1 \rightarrow Q_1$  be an integral homomorphism of fs monoids whose ramification indices are prime to  $p$ . Then there exists a Kummer étale map  $P_1 \rightarrow P_2$  such that the saturated base change  $P_2 \rightarrow Q_2 = (P_2 \oplus_{P_1} Q_1)^{\text{sat}}$  is a saturated homomorphism.*

**Remark 2.5.16.** For  $p = 1$  (i.e.  $\Sigma = \emptyset$ ), Theorem 2.5.14 and Corollary 2.5.7 together imply that one can make a map of monoids  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  saturated by an “alteration” (composition of a Kummer étale map and an affine blow-up), performed “locally” with respect to a given map  $P_0 \rightarrow V$  into a valutive monoid  $V$ . The following diagram illustrates both theorems.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & Q_2 & \longleftarrow & Q_1 & \longleftarrow & Q_0 \\ & \uparrow \text{ saturated} & & \uparrow \text{ integral} & & \uparrow \\ P_2 & \xleftarrow{\text{Kummer étale}} & P_1 & \xleftarrow{\text{affine blowup}} & P_0 \\ & \nwarrow V \text{ divisible} & \nwarrow V \text{ valutive} & & \\ & V & & & \end{array} \quad (2.5.1)$$

Here, the squares are pushouts in the category of fs monoids. The map  $P_1 \rightarrow V$  exists (for a suitable choice of  $P_1$ ) by Lemma 2.5.5 since  $V$  is valutive. The map  $P_2 \rightarrow V$  exists if  $V$  is furthermore divisible, as then the Kummer étale map  $V \rightarrow (V \oplus_{P_1} P_2)^{\text{sat}}$  admits a section.

Indeed, if  $P$  is a saturated monoid with  $P^{\text{gp}}$  divisible, and  $P \rightarrow Q$  is a Kummer étale map, then we can write  $Q^{\text{gp}} = P^{\text{gp}} \oplus M$  with  $M$  a finite group, and then  $Q = P \oplus M$  (see Lemma 2.6.1), so  $P \rightarrow Q$  admits a section.

**Corollary 2.5.17** (“Reduced fibre theorem”). *Let  $V$  be a valutive monoid and let  $\vartheta: V \rightarrow P$  be an sfp map. Suppose that either  $p = 1$  or  $V \rightarrow P$  is étale. Then there exists a Kummer étale map  $V \rightarrow W$  such that the saturated base change  $V \rightarrow Q = (W \oplus_V P)^{\text{sat}}$  is a saturated morphism of finite presentation.*

*Proof.* There exists a map of fs monoids  $V_0 \rightarrow P_0$  and a map  $V_0 \rightarrow V$  such that  $P \simeq (V \oplus_{V_0} P_0)^{\text{sat}}$ . If  $V \rightarrow P$  is étale, then we may further assume by Proposition 2.4.8 that  $V_0 \rightarrow P_0$  is also étale.

Next we use Corollary 2.5.7 as in (2.5.1) to find an affine blow up  $V_0 \rightarrow V_1$  and a factorization  $V_0 \rightarrow V_1 \rightarrow V$  such that the saturated base change  $V_1 \rightarrow P_1 = (V_1 \oplus_{V_0} P_0)^{\text{sat}}$  is integral and  $P \simeq (V \oplus_{V_1} P_1)^{\text{sat}}$ . By assumption either  $p = 1$  or  $V_1 \rightarrow P_1$  is étale. Thus all ramification indices of  $V_1 \rightarrow P_1$  are prime to  $p$ , either trivially or by Lemma 2.5.12. Then Corollary 2.5.15

applies to  $V_1 \rightarrow P_1$  providing a Kummer étale  $V_1 \rightarrow W_1$  such that  $W_1 \rightarrow Q_1 = (W_1 \oplus_{V_1} P_1)^{\text{sat}}$  is a saturated morphism (still of fs monoids and thus of finite presentation by Proposition 2.2.9). Let  $W = (V \oplus_{V_1} W_1)^{\text{sat}}$ , so that  $V \rightarrow W$  is Kummer étale. Then

$$Q = (W \oplus_V P)^{\text{sat}} = (W \oplus_{V_1} P_1)^{\text{sat}} = (W \oplus_{W_1} Q_1)^{\text{sat}} = W \oplus_{W_1} Q_1. \quad \square$$

The result below is an analogue of the following theorem of Grauert and Remmert [BGR84, Corollary 6.4.1/5]: if  $A$  is a reduced affinoid algebra over an algebraically closed non-archimedean field  $K$ , then the subring of powerbounded elements  $A^\circ \subseteq A$  is topologically finitely presented over the valuation ring  $K^+ = K^\circ$ .

**Corollary 2.5.18** (“Grauert–Remmert finiteness theorem”). *Let  $V$  be a divisible and valutive monoid and let  $V \rightarrow P$  be an sfp map. Then  $V \rightarrow P$  is saturated and  $P$  is finitely presented over  $V$ .*

*Proof.* Temporarily take  $p = 1$  and apply Corollary 2.5.17, then use the fact that since  $V^{\text{gp}}$  is divisible, every Kummer étale map  $V \rightarrow W$  admits a section. Indeed, since  $V^{\text{gp}}$  is an injective object and  $V^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow W^{\text{gp}}$  is injective (Lemma 2.1.1), we may write  $W^{\text{gp}} = V^{\text{gp}} \oplus (W^{\text{gp}}/V^{\text{gp}})$ , and then we have  $W = V \oplus (W^{\text{gp}}/V^{\text{gp}})$ .  $\square$

With an argument similar to Proposition 2.5.8, we deduce:

**Proposition 2.5.19.** *Let  $P$  be a saturated monoid. The following are equivalent:*

- (a)  $P$  is of type  $(V_{\text{div}})$ ,
- (b)  $P$  is finitely presented over a divisible valutive submonoid,
- (c)  $P$  is finitely generated over a divisible valutive submonoid.

**Lemma 2.5.20.** *Let  $P$  be a saturated monoid and let  $F \subseteq P$  be a face. If  $P$  is of type  $(V)$  (resp. of type  $(V_{\text{div}})$ ), then so are  $F$ ,  $P_F$ , and  $P/F$ .*

*Proof.* We will make use of the criterion of Proposition 2.5.8 (resp. Proposition 2.5.19). Fix an sfp injective map  $\vartheta: V \rightarrow P$  with  $V$  valutive (resp. valutive and divisible) and let  $S \subseteq P$  be a finite sat-generating set.

We treat  $F$  first. By Lemma 2.3.2 we see that  $F$  is sft over the valutive (resp. valutive and divisible) submonoid  $W = F \cap \vartheta(V)$ . By Proposition 2.5.8 we deduce that  $W \rightarrow F$  is sfp.

For  $P_F$ , consider the commutative square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & P \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V_G & \longrightarrow & P_F \end{array}$$

where  $G \subseteq V$  is the preimage of  $F$ . Then  $V_G$  is valutive (resp. valutive and divisible) and  $V_G \rightarrow P_F$  is injective by Lemma 2.1.1. We claim that this map is sft, with a sat-generating set  $T = S \cup -(S \cap F)$ . Indeed, an element of  $P_F$  is of the form  $p - f$  ( $p \in P$ ,  $f \in F$ ), and we can write  $np = v + \sum m(s)s$  and  $n'f = v' + \sum m'(s)s$  for  $v, v' \in V$  and  $m, m': S \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  (cf. the proof of Lemma 2.3.2). The second equation shows that  $v' \in G$  and  $m'(s) = 0$  for  $s \notin F$ . This implies that  $nn'(p - f)$  belongs to the submonoid of  $P_F$  generated by  $V_G$  and  $T$ , and hence  $T$  is a sat-generating set.

For  $P/F$ , we consider the further square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_G & \longrightarrow & P_F \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V/G & \longrightarrow & P/F, \end{array}$$

Again,  $V/G$  is valutive (resp. valutive and divisible) and  $V/G \rightarrow P/F$  is injective. Moreover, the image of  $S$  (or  $T$ ) in  $P/F$  is easily seen to be a sat-generating set. This finishes the proof.  $\square$

**2.6. More on Kummer étale maps.** We gather additional facts about Kummer étale maps of saturated monoids, to be used in Section 4. Recall that for the definition of a Kummer étale map (Definition 2.4.4) we have fixed an implicit finite set of primes  $\Sigma$  and set  $p = \prod_{\ell \in \Sigma} \ell$ .

**Lemma 2.6.1.** *Let  $u: P \rightarrow Q$  be a map of saturated monoids. The following are equivalent:*

- (a)  *$u$  is Kummer étale (Definition 2.4.4),*
- (b)  *$u$  is injective, the quotient  $Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}$  is finite of order prime to  $p$  and  $P = Q \cap P^{\text{gp}}$ , i.e.  $u$  is exact (equivalently, if  $Q$  equals the saturation of  $P$  in  $Q^{\text{gp}}$ ).*

*Proof.* The only non-trivial statement is that a map satisfying (b) is sfp. Since  $u$  is injective, by Proposition 2.2.10, this is equivalent to sft. But  $Q$  is sat-generated over  $P$  by any subset  $S$  of  $Q$  whose image generates  $Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}$ : indeed, if  $Q'$  is the submonoid of  $Q$  generated by  $P$  and  $S$ , then  $(Q')^{\text{gp}} = Q^{\text{gp}}$ , and if  $n$  is the order of  $Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}$ , then for every  $q \in Q$  we have  $nq \in P^{\text{gp}} \cap Q = P \subseteq Q'$ .  $\square$

If  $P \rightarrow Q$  is a homomorphism of monoids, we shall say that  $Q$  is **finite as a  $P$ -set** if there exists a finite set  $S_0 \subseteq S$  such that  $S = P + S_0$  (cf. [Ogu18, §I 1.2]). As we have seen in Example 2.5.3, if  $P \rightarrow Q$  is a Kummer étale map between monoids of type (V), it is not in general true that  $Q$  is finite as a  $P$ -set. In particular, in such cases the map  $\text{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[Q]) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[P])$  will be an integral morphism which is not of finite type. However, this issue disappears for monoids of type  $(V_{\text{div}})$ :

**Lemma 2.6.2.** *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be a Kummer étale map between monoids of type  $(V_{\text{div}})$ . Then  $Q$  is finite as a  $P$ -set.*

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.5.19,  $P$  is finitely generated over a divisible valutive submonoid  $V$ . If  $n$  denotes the exponent of  $(Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}})$ , we have inclusions  $P \subseteq Q \subseteq \frac{1}{n}P$  inside  $P^{\text{gp}} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$ . If  $p_1, \dots, p_r$  generate  $P$  over  $V$ , then  $p'_i = \frac{1}{n}p_i$  generate  $\frac{1}{n}P$  over  $\frac{1}{n}V$ , which equals  $V$  because  $V^{\text{gp}}$  is divisible and  $V$  is saturated. In particular,  $p'_1, \dots, p'_r$  generate  $\frac{1}{n}P$  over  $P$ . Let  $S \subseteq \frac{1}{n}P$  be the finite set of all sums  $\sum_{i=1}^r n_i p'_i$  with  $n_i \in \{0, \dots, n-1\}$ . Then  $S$  generates  $\frac{1}{n}P$  as a  $P$ -set. We check that  $S \cap Q$  generates  $Q$  as a  $P$ -set: for  $q \in Q$ , we can write  $q = p + s$  for some  $s \in S$  and  $p \in P$ , and then  $s = q - p \in S \cap Q^{\text{gp}} = S \cap Q$ .  $\square$

It is well-known that Kummer étale maps are not flat in general (consider e.g. the quotient map  $\mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{Q}}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{Q}}^2/\mu_2$ ). For Kummer étale maps between valutive monoids, this does not occur.

**Lemma 2.6.3.** *Let  $V$  be a valutive monoid and let  $V \rightarrow W$  be a Kummer étale map. Then  $W$  is valutive and is ind-free as a  $V$ -set. In particular, the homomorphism*

$$\mathbb{Z}[V] \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}[W]$$

*is flat.*

*Proof.* Let  $x \in W^{\text{gp}}$ , and let  $n \geq 1$  be such that  $nx \in V^{\text{gp}}$ . Then either  $nx$  or  $-nx$  belongs to  $V$  and hence to  $W$ . Since  $W$  is saturated, one of  $x$  or  $-x$  belongs to  $W$ , showing that  $W$  is valutive.

For the second assertion, for  $t \in W^{\text{gp}}/V^{\text{gp}}$ , let  $W_t \subseteq W$  be the intersection of the corresponding coset with  $W$ . Then  $W = \coprod_t W_t$  as  $V$ -sets. Moreover, each  $W_t$  can be identified with a fractional ideal  $J_t$  of  $V$  (i.e., a sub- $V$ -set of  $V^{\text{gp}}$ ): pick  $w \in W_t$  and consider the map  $v \mapsto w + v: V^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow W^{\text{gp}}$ . The preimage  $J_t$  of  $W_t$  maps bijectively onto  $W_t$ . We can write  $J_t$  as the inductive limit of its finitely generated sub- $V$ -sets. Since  $V$  is valutive, every finitely generated fractional ideal is principal and free. Thus each  $W_t$  is and hence  $W$  is ind-free.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.6.4.** *Let  $P \rightarrow Q$  be a Kummer étale map between saturated monoids. Then, the induced map  $\mathrm{Spec}(Q) \rightarrow \mathrm{Spec}(P)$  is a bijection.*

*Proof.* Let  $F$  be a face of  $P$  and let  $G$  be its saturation in  $Q$ . It is easy to check that  $G$  is a face of  $Q$ , and that this produces an inverse map  $\mathrm{Spec}(P) \rightarrow \mathrm{Spec}(Q)$ .  $\square$

The following lemma is well known for fs monoids. The argument works identically also for saturated monoids.

**Lemma 2.6.5** (Vidal, [Ill02, Lemme 3.3]). *Let  $u: P \rightarrow Q$  be a morphism of saturated monoids such that the cokernel of  $u^{\mathrm{gp}}: P^{\mathrm{gp}} \rightarrow Q^{\mathrm{gp}}$  is torsion. Then the map*

$$\psi: (Q \oplus_P Q)^{\mathrm{sat}} \longrightarrow Q \oplus (Q^{\mathrm{gp}}/P^{\mathrm{gp}}), \quad (a, b) \mapsto (a + b, b)$$

*is an isomorphism.*

Next, we discuss the “Kummer étale fundamental group” of a saturated monoid  $P$ . Recall that in Definition 2.4.4 we fixed a set of primes  $\Sigma$  and denoted their formal product by  $p$ . Let

$$\mathbb{Z}_\Sigma = \mathbb{Z}[\frac{1}{n} : (n, p) = 1] \subseteq \mathbb{Q}.$$

By Lemma 2.6.1, there is an equivalence between the category of Kummer étale maps  $P \rightarrow Q$  and the category of group extensions

$$0 \longrightarrow P^{\mathrm{gp}} \longrightarrow M \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow 0$$

where  $N$  is finite of order prime to  $p$ . Let us call a monoid connected if its associated group is torsion free. If  $P$  is connected, then the category of connected Kummer étale  $Q$  over  $P$  is identified with the poset of subgroups  $M \subseteq P^{\mathrm{gp}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}_\Sigma$  containing  $P^{\mathrm{gp}}$  as a subgroup of finite index.

For the definition below, we pick an abelian group  $\mu$  isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}_\Sigma/\mathbb{Z}$  and denote by  $\mu_n$  or  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}(1)$  its  $n$ -torsion subgroup. Later, we will mainly use  $\Sigma = \{p\}$ , and  $\mu$  will signify  $\mu(k) = \varinjlim_n \mu_n(k)$  for an algebraically closed field  $k$  of characteristic exponent  $p$ . We denote by

$$\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}'(1) = \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}_\Sigma/\mathbb{Z}, \mu) = \varprojlim_{(n,p)=1} \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}(1)$$

its Tate module, which is a rank one free module over the prime-to- $p$  (or prime-to- $\Sigma$ ) completion of  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

**Definition 2.6.6.** Let  $P$  be a saturated monoid. We define the **fundamental group** of  $P$  as

$$\pi_1(P) = \mathrm{Hom}(P^{\mathrm{gp}}, \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}'(1)).$$

We note that there is a natural identification

$$\pi_1(P) = \mathrm{Hom}(P^{\mathrm{gp}}, \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}_\Sigma/\mathbb{Z}, \mu)) = \mathrm{Hom}(P^{\mathrm{gp}} \otimes (\mathbb{Z}_\Sigma/\mathbb{Z}), \mu) = \mathrm{Hom}((P_\infty^{\mathrm{gp}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_\Sigma)/P^{\mathrm{gp}}, \mu)$$

In particular,  $\pi_1(P)$  has the structure of a profinite group.

**Lemma 2.6.7.** *Let  $P$  be a monoid of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ . Then, the following hold.*

- (a) *The fundamental group  $\pi_1(P)$  is finitely generated (for arbitrary  $p$ ).*
- (b) *For every  $n \geq 1$ , the group  $P^{\mathrm{gp}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$  is finite.*

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.5.19 we may choose an injection  $V \hookrightarrow P$  with  $V$  divisible valutive and  $P$  finitely generated over  $V$ . As  $V^{\mathrm{gp}}$  is divisible there is a non-canonical isomorphism  $P^{\mathrm{gp}} \simeq V^{\mathrm{gp}} \oplus P^{\mathrm{gp}}/V^{\mathrm{gp}}$ . The claims follow from  $V^{\mathrm{gp}}/nV^{\mathrm{gp}} = 0$  for all  $n$ .  $\square$



## 3. LOG SCHEMES BEYOND FS

In this section we develop logarithmic geometry beyond the case of fs log schemes. The most important notion is that of an sfp morphism (Definition 3.3.1) which is modelled on the notion of an sfp map of monoids from §2.2.

**3.1. Preliminaries on saturated quasi-coherent log schemes.** A log scheme is **quasi-coherent** if it admits a chart étale locally [Kat89, §2]. For a monoid  $P$  we denote by  $\mathbb{A}_P$  the scheme  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[P])$  endowed with the log structure associated to the natural map  $P \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}[P]$ . By [Ogu18, Proposition III 1.2.4], a chart  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X(X)$  on the log scheme  $X$  is the same as a strict map of log schemes  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$ .

If  $f: X \rightarrow Y$  is a strict map and  $Y$  is quasi-coherent, then  $X$  is quasi-coherent as well, simply by pulling back charts. Alternatively, this endows  $X$  with the pullback log structure, which remains quasi-coherent.

A log scheme is **integral** (resp. **saturated**) if étale locally it admits a chart by an integral (resp. saturated) monoid. In particular integral (resp. saturated) log schemes are quasi-coherent by definition. The pullback log structure of an integral (resp. saturated) log structure is again integral (resp. saturated).

**Remark 3.1.1.** We warn the reader that our convention is slightly non-standard. In the literature (e.g. in [Ogu18]), integral (resp. saturated) log schemes are defined as log schemes  $X$  such that for every étale  $U \rightarrow X$ , the monoid  $\mathcal{M}_X(U)$  is integral (resp. saturated). It follows from Lemma 3.1.2 below that a log scheme  $X$  is integral (resp. saturated) in our sense if and only if it is integral (resp. saturated) in the more standard sense and quasi-coherent. This discrepancy will not cause issues since all of the log schemes considered in this paper are quasi-coherent.

We spell out equivalent conditions for integral (resp. saturated) log schemes (well known for fs log schemes).

**Lemma 3.1.2.** *Let  $X$  be a quasi-coherent log scheme.*

- (1) *The following are equivalent:*
  - (a) *Étale locally on  $X$ , there exists a chart  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X$  with an integral (resp. saturated) monoid  $P$ , i.e.  $X$  is integral (resp. saturated).*
  - (b) *For every étale  $U \rightarrow X$ , the monoid  $\mathcal{M}_X(U)$  is integral (resp. saturated).*
  - (c) *For every geometric point  $\bar{x}$ , the monoid  $\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{x}}$  is integral (resp. saturated).*
  - (d) *For every geometric point  $\bar{x}$ , the monoid  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{X,\bar{x}}$  is integral (resp. saturated) and  $\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{x}}$  is  $u$ -integral (i.e.  $\mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{x}}^\times$  acts freely on  $\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{x}}$ ).*
- (2) *Moreover, if  $X$  is integral (resp. saturated) and  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  is a chart with  $P$  arbitrary, then the induced map  $P^{\mathrm{int}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  (resp.  $P^{\mathrm{sat}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$ ) is a chart as well.*

*Proof.* (a)  $\Rightarrow$  (d): The stalk  $\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{x}}$  is the pushout of  $P \leftarrow F_{\bar{x}} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{x}}^\times$  where the face  $F_{\bar{x}}$  is the preimage of  $\mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{x}}^\times$  under  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{x}}$ . Since  $P$  is integral and  $F_{\bar{x}} \rightarrow P$  injective, the pushout  $\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{x}}$  is  $u$ -integral. Moreover,  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{X,\bar{x}}$  equals the quotient  $P/F_{\bar{x}}$  and thus is integral.

(d)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (c): By [Ogu18, Proposition I 1.3.3] a monoid  $Q$  is integral if and only if  $Q$  is  $u$ -integral and  $\overline{Q} = Q/Q^\times$  is integral. The assertion about “saturated” then follows easily.

(c)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (b): This is part of [Ogu18, Proposition II 1.1.3].

(b) and (c) imply (a): Let  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X(U)$  be a local chart, with  $P$  arbitrary. Since  $\mathcal{M}_X(U)$  is integral (resp. saturated) by (b), this map factors through  $P^{\mathrm{int}}$  (resp.  $P^{\mathrm{sat}}$ ). We claim that the resulting map

$$P^{\mathrm{int}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X(U) \quad (\text{resp. } P^{\mathrm{sat}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X(U))$$

is another chart for  $\mathcal{M}_X|_U$  (which will also show (2)). Let  $\mathcal{M}_U^i$  (resp.  $\mathcal{M}_U^s$ ) denote the log structure induced by  $P^{\mathrm{int}}$  (resp.  $P^{\mathrm{sat}}$ ) on  $U$ . Then there are natural maps  $\mathcal{M}_X|_U \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_U^i \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_U^s$ , which we

show are isomorphisms by computing the stalks at a geometric point  $\bar{u}$  of  $U$ . Integralisation is a left adjoint, so commutes with pushouts. Therefore, and since  $\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{u}}$  is integral by assumption (c), we have

$$\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{u}} = \mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{u}}^{\text{int}} = (P \oplus_{\alpha^{-1}(\mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times)} \mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times)^{\text{int}} \xrightarrow{\sim} P^{\text{int}} \oplus_{(\alpha^{\text{int}})^{-1}(\mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times)} \mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times = \mathcal{M}_{U,\bar{u}}^i$$

where  $\alpha: P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{u}}$  is the induced map. Here we use that for monoids  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  we have  $A^{\text{int}} \oplus_{B^{\text{int}}} C^{\text{int}} = A^{\text{int}} \oplus_B C^{\text{int}}$ , which is true since  $B \rightarrow B^{\text{int}}$  is surjective. This shows the claim in the integral case.

Furthermore, saturation is a left adjoint, so commutes with pushouts. Therefore, since now  $\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{u}}$  is saturated by assumption (c), we have

$$\mathcal{M}_{X,\bar{u}} = \mathcal{M}_{U,\bar{u}}^{\text{sat}} \xrightarrow{\sim} (\mathcal{M}_{U,\bar{u}}^i)^{\text{sat}} = (P^{\text{int}} \oplus_{\alpha^{-1}(\mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times)} \mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times)^{\text{sat}} \xrightarrow{\sim} P^{\text{sat}} \oplus_{\alpha^{-1}(\mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times)} \mathcal{O}_{X,\bar{u}}^\times = \mathcal{M}_{U,\bar{u}}^s.$$

Here we use that for integral monoids  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  we have  $A^{\text{sat}} \oplus_{B^{\text{sat}}} C^{\text{sat}} = A^{\text{sat}} \oplus_B C^{\text{sat}}$ , which is true since  $B \rightarrow B^{\text{sat}}$  is an epimorphism in the category of integral monoids. This shows the claim in the saturated case.

These arguments also show assertion (2).  $\square$

**Remark 3.1.3** (Chart lifting property). It is not clear whether every map between quasi-coherent log schemes locally admits a chart. Moreover, we do not expect the class of maps which admit local charts to be closed under composition, and we do not know if for maps  $Y_0 \rightarrow X$  and  $Y_1 \rightarrow X$  admitting local charts the fibre product  $Y_0 \times_X Y_1$  is quasi-coherent. We will avoid such issues by considering sfp morphisms, see §3.3 below, because such morphisms are examples for the following notion.

We say that a morphism  $f: X \rightarrow S$  of quasi-coherent log schemes has the **chart lifting property** with respect to a chart  $\alpha: P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_S(U)$  on an étale open  $U \rightarrow S$  if the following holds. There is an étale covering  $\{V_i \rightarrow U \times_S X\}$ , monoid homomorphisms  $\vartheta_i: P \rightarrow Q_i$ , and commutative squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_i & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A}_{Q_i} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \vartheta_i \\ U & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & \mathbb{A}_P \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are strict. So  $U \times_S X$  locally has a chart for  $f$  compatible with the given chart on  $U$ . We say that a morphism  $f: X \rightarrow S$  of quasi-coherent log schemes has the **chart lifting property** if it has the chart lifting property with respect to every étale local chart of  $S$ .

By the final assertion (2) of Lemma 3.1.2, if  $X$  and  $S$  are integral (resp. saturated), then  $X \rightarrow S$  has the chart lifting property if and only if the above condition holds with  $P$  and  $Q_i$  integral (resp. saturated).

Moreover, one easily shows that the composition of two maps with the chart lifting property has the chart lifting property, and that the fibre product of two maps  $Y \rightarrow S$  and  $X \rightarrow S$  with the chart lifting property is quasi-coherent, with the two projections  $X \times_S Y \rightarrow X$ ,  $X \times_S Y \rightarrow Y$  also with the chart lifting property. Moreover, since the saturation (resp. integralisation) map has the chart lifting property (essentially by construction, see Remark 3.1.8 below), the last assertion holds for fibre products in integral (resp. saturated) log schemes. Furthermore, strict maps have the chart lifting property, of course.

**Remark 3.1.4.** It would be easy to construct charts for morphisms of log schemes if for affine log schemes  $X$  admitting local charts, the global sections  $P = \mathcal{M}(X)$  would yield a chart  $\text{id}: P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$ . Example 3.6.1 due to Takeshi Tsuji gives a counterexample against this optimistic constructions of charts.

The following lemma provides local charts for maps under some conditions. Recall that an integral quasi-coherent log scheme  $X$  is **fine** if étale locally it admits a chart by a fine (finitely generated integral) monoid.

**Lemma 3.1.5** (Beilinson [Bei13, §1.1]). *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  be a morphism from a quasi-coherent log scheme  $X$  to a log scheme  $S$ . Then  $f$  has the chart lifting property with respect to charts  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(S)$  on  $S$  by finitely generated monoids  $P$ .*

*More precisely, if  $X$  is quasi-coherent (resp. integral, resp. saturated) and  $\mu: P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(S)$  is a chart by a finitely generated (resp. fine, resp. fs) monoid  $P$ , then étale locally on  $X$  we can find a morphism  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  of monoids (resp. integral monoids, resp. saturated monoids) and a commutative diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A}_Q \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \vartheta \\ S & \xrightarrow{\mu} & \mathbb{A}_P \end{array}$$

where the horizontal maps are strict.

*Proof.* [Bei13, §1.1] asserts chart lifting for  $f: X \rightarrow S$  for fine charts on  $S$  and with  $X$  integral. The proof essentially carries over; we revisit Beilinson's proof, which in turn is based on a proof by Kato.

Let  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$  be a geometric point and replace  $X$  with a neighbourhood of  $\bar{x}$  such that  $X$  has a global chart  $\nu_0: Q_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$ . Let  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  be a finite set of generators of  $P$ . After replacing  $X$  with a neighbourhood of  $\bar{x}$ , we may assume that there exist  $q_i \in Q_0$  and units  $u_i \in \mathcal{O}^\times(X)$  such that  $f^*(\mu(p_i)) = \nu_0(q_i) \cdot u_i$  in  $\mathcal{M}(X)$ . The map

$$\nu': Q' = Q_0 \oplus \mathbb{Z}^n \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}(X), \quad \nu'(q, a_1, \dots, a_n) = \nu_0(q) \cdot \prod_{i=1}^n u_i^{a_i}$$

is also a chart for  $X$ . We write  $Q$  for the image of  $\nu'$ . The map  $f^* \circ \mu$  factors through a map  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  because this can be checked on a generating set for  $P$ . The assertion now follows because by Lemma 3.1.6 below, the inclusion  $\nu: Q \rightarrow \Gamma(X, \mathcal{M}_X)$  is also a chart for  $X$ .

If  $X$  and  $S$  are integral (resp. saturated) and  $P$  is fine (resp. fs), then we may replace  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow Q$  as constructed above by the integralisation  $P \rightarrow Q^{\text{int}}$  (resp. saturation  $P = P^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow Q^{\text{sat}}$ ). The chart  $Q \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  factors through a map  $Q^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  by Lemma 3.1.2. This is still a chart by the final assertion (2) of Lemma 3.1.2.  $\square$

The proof used the following simple lemma.

**Lemma 3.1.6.** *Let  $X$  be a log scheme, let  $Q'$  be a monoid, and let  $\nu': Q' \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  be a chart. Let  $Q \subseteq \mathcal{M}(X)$  be the image of this map. Then, the inclusion  $\nu: Q \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  is a chart as well.*

*Proof.* The maps of prelog structures  $Q'_X \twoheadrightarrow Q_X \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X$  yield maps of associated log structures

$$(Q'_X)^{\log} \longrightarrow (Q_X)^{\log} \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_X$$

whose composition is an isomorphism. Thus the first map is injective. Moreover, associated log structure is a left adjoint functor, so it preserves epimorphisms, and hence the first map is an epimorphism as well. But, in any category, a split monomorphism which is an epimorphism is an isomorphism. Therefore  $(Q_X)^{\log} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X$  is an isomorphism, and  $\nu: Q \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  is a chart.  $\square$

On the existence of fibre products in quasi-coherent log schemes we have the following lemma.

**Lemma 3.1.7.** *Let  $f: X \rightarrow S$  and  $g: Y \rightarrow S$  be maps of quasi-coherent log schemes. The fibre product  $X \times_S Y$  in the category of log schemes is quasi-coherent if one of the following holds.*

- (1) One of the maps  $f$  or  $g$  is strict.
- (2) Étale locally on  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $S$  there exists a chart  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(S)$  and charts  $P \rightarrow Q$  and  $P \rightarrow R$  for  $f$  and  $g$ , i.e.,  $Q \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  and  $R \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(Y)$  are charts and the obvious maps commute.
- (3) The log schemes  $X$  and  $Y$  are integral and  $S$  is a fine log scheme.

*Proof.* (1): Let us assume  $f$  is strict. Then the projection  $X \times_S Y \rightarrow Y$  is also strict and charts for  $Y$  pull back to charts for  $X \times_S Y$ .

(2): The fibre product can be constructed étale locally and the property of being quasi-coherent is étale local as well. So we may assume that both maps have charts with respect to a common chart of  $S$  as in the statement. Then the map

$$X \times_S Y \longrightarrow \mathbb{A}_Q \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_R = \mathbb{A}_{Q \oplus_P R}$$

is strict showing that  $X \times_S Y$  is quasi-coherent.

(3): The assumptions on charts in (2) are met thanks to Beilinson's Lemma 3.1.5. □

**Remark 3.1.8.** The inclusions of saturated log schemes into integral log schemes and further to quasi-coherent log schemes admit right adjoints. These are the **integralisation** of  $X$  denoted by  $X^{\text{int}}$  and the **saturation** denoted by  $X^{\text{sat}}$ .

The construction of saturation uses three steps (and works verbatim for integralisation). First, if  $X \rightarrow Y$  is strict and  $Y^{\text{sat}}$  exists, then  $X^{\text{sat}} = X \times_Y Y^{\text{sat}}$  with the fibre product as log schemes and the projection  $X^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow Y^{\text{sat}}$  is strict. It therefore suffices to construct the saturation étale locally on  $X$ , because the local saturations will then automatically form a descent datum and glue to a saturation globally (gluing on the level of the underlying schemes is permissible since the morphisms to  $X$  are affine). We may thus assume that we have a global chart, and in fact that  $X = \mathbb{A}_P$  with the usual log structure induced by  $P$ . In this case  $X^{\text{sat}}$  is simply  $\mathbb{A}_{P^{\text{sat}}}$ .

We note here that the maps  $X^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow X^{\text{int}}$  and  $X^{\text{int}} \rightarrow X$  as well as their composition have the chart lifting property, essentially by construction.

We can now state three cases where saturated fibre products exist for saturated log schemes.

**Lemma 3.1.9.** *In the category of integral (resp. saturated) log schemes the fibre product, denoted by  $X \times_S^{\text{int}} Y$  (resp.  $X \times_S^{\text{sat}} Y$ ), exists if one of the following holds:*

- (1) One of the maps  $f: X \rightarrow S$  or  $g: Y \rightarrow S$  is strict: then the fibre product  $X \times_S Y$  as log schemes is already integral (resp. saturated).
- (2) Étale locally on  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $S$  there exist charts as in Lemma 3.1.7 (2).
- (3) The log scheme  $S$  is a fine (resp. fs) log scheme.

*In all these cases the integral (resp. saturated) fibre product has the form*

$$\begin{aligned} X \times_S^{\text{int}} Y &= (X \times_S Y)^{\text{int}}, \\ X \times_S^{\text{sat}} Y &= (X \times_S Y)^{\text{sat}}. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* Lemma 3.1.7 shows that in each of the cases  $X \times_S Y$  is quasi-coherent. □

We next prove some scheme-theoretic properties of integralisation and saturation.

**Proposition 3.1.10.** *Let  $X$  be a quasi-coherent log scheme.*

- (1) *The morphism of schemes underlying the integralisation map  $X^{\text{int}} \rightarrow X$  is a closed immersion.*
- (2) *The morphism of schemes underlying the saturation map  $X^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow X$  is integral.*<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup>It is a bit unfortunate that the term “integral” appears in this article in several entirely different meanings: integral scheme, integral morphism of schemes, integral monoid/log scheme, integral morphism of monoids/log

(3) If moreover  $X$  is an integral log scheme, then  $\nu$  is surjective.

*Proof.* The scheme-theoretic properties in these assertions are all stable under base change and étale local on the target. By construction of integralisation and saturation, it is therefore enough to consider  $X = \mathbb{A}_P$  for a monoid  $P$ , i.e. the morphisms

$$\mathbb{A}_{P^{\text{sat}}} \longrightarrow \mathbb{A}_{P^{\text{int}}} \longrightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$$

Since for every monoid  $P$ , the map  $P \rightarrow P^{\text{int}}$  is surjective, the map  $\mathbb{A}_{P^{\text{int}}} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  is a closed immersion, showing (1). For (2), we note that for every  $q \in P^{\text{sat}}$  we have  $nq = \iota(p)$  for some  $p \in P$  and some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , where  $\iota: P \rightarrow P^{\text{sat}}$  is the canonical map. This means that the corresponding element  $q$  of  $\mathbb{Z}[P^{\text{sat}}]$  satisfies the integral equation  $T^n = \iota(p)$ .

To show (3), it is enough to prove that every homomorphism  $\vartheta: P \rightarrow k$  to an algebraically closed field extends to  $P^{\text{sat}}$ . The face  $F = \vartheta^{-1}(k^\times)$  of  $P$  has a unique extension to a face  $F' \subseteq P^{\text{sat}}$ , see Remark 2.3.1. Moreover, since  $P$  is integral, the map  $F \hookrightarrow F'$  is injective, and hence by Lemma 2.1.1 also  $F^{\text{gp}} \hookrightarrow (F')^{\text{gp}}$  is injective. The map  $F \rightarrow k^\times$  extends uniquely to  $F^{\text{gp}}$ . Since  $k^\times$  is divisible and hence an injective object in the category of abelian groups, there exists a  $\vartheta': (F')^{\text{gp}} \rightarrow k^\times$  with  $\vartheta'|_F = \vartheta|_F$ . We then extend  $\vartheta'|_{F'}$  to  $\vartheta': P^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow k$  by sending  $P^{\text{sat}} \setminus F'$  to zero.  $\square$

**3.2. Prelog rings.** In this subsection we discuss prelog rings and the associated log schemes.

A **prelog ring** is a monoid homomorphism  $P \rightarrow A$  from a commutative monoid  $P$  (written additively) to the underlying multiplicative monoid of a commutative ring  $A$  (equivalently a ring homomorphism  $\mathbb{Z}[P] \rightarrow A$ ). Prelog rings form a category in the obvious way. This category has filtered colimits and is generated under filtered colimits by its compact objects, which are precisely the prelog rings  $P \rightarrow A$  where  $P$  is finitely presented and  $A$  is of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  (use Proposition 2.2.5 which implies that the compact monoids are the finitely presented ones).

A prelog ring  $P \rightarrow A$  is **saturated** if  $P$  is saturated. The inclusion of saturated prelog rings into prelog rings admits a left adjoint, which is given by

$$(P \rightarrow A)^{\text{sat}} = (P^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[P^{\text{sat}}]).$$

Indeed, given a map  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  with  $Q$  saturated, we get a unique factorisation  $P \rightarrow P^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow Q$ , and then a unique  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[P^{\text{sat}}] \rightarrow B$ . The category of saturated prelog rings has small colimits, with pushouts given by

$$(P \rightarrow A) \otimes_{(P_0 \rightarrow A_0)} (Q_0 \rightarrow B_0) = ((P \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}} \rightarrow A \otimes_{A_0} B_0,$$

and is generated under filtered colimits by its compact objects which are precisely the  $(P \rightarrow A)$  with  $P$  fs and  $A$  of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  (see Corollary 3.2.3 below).

**Proposition 3.2.1.** *Let  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  be a morphism of saturated prelog rings. Then  $(Q \rightarrow B)$  is a compact object in the category of saturated prelog rings over  $(P \rightarrow A)$  if and only if*

- (i) *the homomorphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sfp, and*
- (ii) *the induced homomorphism of rings  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q] \rightarrow B$  is of finite presentation.*

**Definition 3.2.2.** A morphism of saturated prelog rings  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  is **sfp** if the equivalent conditions of Proposition 3.2.1 are satisfied.

*Proof of Proposition 3.2.1.* The proof is entirely straightforward; we include it for completeness. Suppose (i) and (ii) hold, let  $(M \rightarrow R) = \varinjlim (M_i \rightarrow R_i)$  be a filtered colimit of saturated prelog rings over  $(P \rightarrow A)$  and let  $(Q \rightarrow B) \rightarrow (M \rightarrow R)$  be a morphism over  $(P \rightarrow A)$ .

schemes. Although the intended meaning should always be clear from context, we nevertheless advise the reader to pay close attention.

Since  $P \rightarrow Q$  is sfp by (i),  $Q$  is a compact object in the category of saturated monoids over  $P$  (Proposition 2.2.10), and hence the morphism  $Q \rightarrow M$  factors as  $Q \rightarrow M_{i_0} \rightarrow M$  for some index  $i_0$ . Then  $(R_i)_{i \geq i_0}$  becomes a system of  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$ -algebras.

For any prelog ring  $(M' \rightarrow R')$  over  $(P \rightarrow A)$ , extending a given homomorphism  $Q \rightarrow M'$  over  $P$  to a morphism of prelog rings  $(Q \rightarrow B) \rightarrow (M' \rightarrow R')$  over  $(P \rightarrow A)$  is the equivalent to finding a homomorphism  $B \rightarrow R'$  of  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$ -algebras. By condition (ii),  $B$  is a compact object in the category of  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$ -algebras, and hence the  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$ -algebra homomorphism  $B \rightarrow R$  above factors through  $B \rightarrow R_i$  for some index  $i \geq i_0$ , providing a factorisation

$$(Q \rightarrow B) \longrightarrow (M_i \rightarrow R_i) \longrightarrow (M \rightarrow R).$$

Thus  $(Q \rightarrow B)$  is compact.

For the converse direction we suppose that  $(Q \rightarrow B)$  is compact. To show (i), let  $Q \rightarrow M$  be a morphism over  $P$  with  $M = \varinjlim M_i$  a filtered colimit of saturated monoids over  $P$ . Then  $(M \rightarrow 0) = \varinjlim (M_i \rightarrow 0)$  as saturated prelog rings over  $(P \rightarrow A)$ . Therefore the map

$$(Q \rightarrow B) \longrightarrow (M \rightarrow 0)$$

factors through  $(M_i \rightarrow 0)$  for some  $i$ , and then  $Q \rightarrow M$  factors as  $Q \rightarrow M_i \rightarrow M$  over  $P$ , so that  $Q$  is compact. By Proposition 2.2.10 property (i) follows.

To show (ii), let  $R = \varinjlim R_i$  be a filtered colimit of  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$ -algebras, and let  $B \rightarrow R$  be an  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$ -algebra homomorphism. Then  $(Q \rightarrow R) = \varinjlim (Q \rightarrow R_i)$  in saturated prelog rings over  $(P \rightarrow A)$ , and thus the map  $(Q \rightarrow B) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow R)$  factors through  $(Q \rightarrow R_i)$  for some  $i$ , so that  $B \rightarrow R$  factors through  $R_i$ .  $\square$

The following corollary is immediate.

**Corollary 3.2.3.** *A saturated prelog ring  $(P \rightarrow A)$  is a compact object in the category of saturated prelog rings if and only if  $P$  is an fs monoid and  $A$  is of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ .*

**Corollary 3.2.4.** *The composition of sfp morphisms of prelog rings is again sfp.*

*Proof.* This is formal using the characterisation as compact objects.  $\square$

**Proposition 3.2.5.** *Let  $P \rightarrow A = \varinjlim_i (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  for a filtered direct system of prelog rings, and let  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  be an sfp morphism of prelog rings.*

*Then, for large enough  $i$ , there is an sfp morphism  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i) \rightarrow (Q_i \rightarrow B_i)$  and a cocartesian diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (Q \rightarrow B) & \longleftarrow & (Q_i \rightarrow B_i) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ (P \rightarrow A) & \longleftarrow & (P_i \rightarrow A_i) \end{array}$$

*in saturated prelog rings.*

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.2.10 there exists a pushout square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q' \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P' \end{array}$$

in the category of saturated monoids where  $P' \rightarrow Q'$  is a morphism of fs monoids. Since  $P'$  is a compact object in saturated monoids by Corollary 2.2.14, the map  $P' \rightarrow P = \varinjlim P_i$  factors as  $P' \rightarrow P_i$  for  $i$  large enough. We fix an initial choice  $i_0$  and restrict the filtered system to all indices  $i \geq i_0$ . Thus the system  $(P_i)$  restricts to a system of monoids over  $P'$ . For all such  $i$



we set  $Q_i = (P_i \oplus_{P'} Q')^{\text{sat}}$  so that  $Q = \varinjlim_{i \geq i_0} Q_i$ . The maps  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  are sfp by Lemma 2.2.8 Proposition 2.2.9.

By assumption, the map

$$\varinjlim_{i \geq i_0} A_i \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P_i]} \mathbb{Z}[Q_i] = A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q] \rightarrow B$$

is of finite presentation. Hence, for again large enough  $i$ , the  $A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$ -algebra  $B$  descends to an  $A_i \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P_i]} \mathbb{Z}[Q_i]$ -algebra  $B_i$  of finite presentation. This exhibits the desired sfp morphism  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i) \rightarrow (Q_i \rightarrow B_i)$  of prelog rings.  $\square$

For a prelog ring  $(P \rightarrow A)$ , we define

$$\text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$$

to be the scheme  $X = \text{Spec}(A)$  endowed with the log structure induced by  $P \rightarrow A = \Gamma(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ . For example, we have  $\mathbb{A}_P = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}[P])$ . If  $Y$  is a log scheme, then  $(\mathcal{M}_Y(Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y(Y))$  is a prelog ring. These constructions define functors between the category of prelog rings and the opposite of the category of log schemes.

**Lemma 3.2.6.** *We have an adjunction*

$$\text{Hom}(Y, \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)) \simeq \text{Hom}((P \rightarrow A), (\mathcal{M}_Y(Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y(Y))). \quad (3.2.1)$$

*Proof.* By [Ogu18, Proposition III 1.2.9], we have

$$\text{Hom}(Y, \mathbb{A}_P) = \text{Hom}(P, \mathcal{M}_Y(Y)).$$

Moreover, for every strict map of log schemes  $X' \rightarrow X$  we have

$$X' \simeq X \times_{\underline{X}} \underline{X'}.$$

Applying this to the map  $\text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}(Y, \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)) &= \text{Hom}(Y, \mathbb{A}_P) \times_{\text{Hom}(Y, \text{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}[P]))} \text{Hom}(Y, \text{Spec}(A)) \\ &= \text{Hom}(P, \mathcal{M}_Y(Y)) \times_{\text{Hom}(P, \mathcal{O}_Y(Y))} \text{Hom}(A, \mathcal{O}_Y(Y)) \\ &= \text{Hom}((P \rightarrow A), (\mathcal{M}_Y(Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y(Y))). \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

In particular, if  $(P \rightarrow A) = \varinjlim (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  where  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  is a filtered colimit of prelog rings, then we have

$$\text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A) = \varprojlim \text{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$$

is a cofiltered limit. If we choose  $P_i \rightarrow A_i$ , as we always can, to be compact in prelog rings, then we get the claim of the following lemma.

**Lemma 3.2.7.** *Let  $X$  be an affine saturated log scheme with a global chart. Then  $X$  is the cofiltered inverse limit  $\varprojlim \text{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  of affine fs log schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ .*

**3.3. Maps of saturated finite presentation.** We work in the category of saturated log schemes.

**Definition 3.3.1.** Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of saturated log schemes.

- (i) The map  $f$  is called **locally of finite presentation up to saturation** or **locally sfp** for short if étale locally on  $X$  and  $Y$  it is isomorphic to the spectrum of an sfp map  $\vartheta: (P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  of prelog rings.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \xleftarrow{\sim} & \text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B) \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \vartheta \\ X & \xleftarrow{\sim} & \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A) \end{array}$$

- (ii) The map  $f$  is called **of finite presentation up to saturation** or **sfp** for short if it is locally sfp and qcqs.
- (iii) We denote the category of sfp morphisms with target  $X$  by  $\mathbf{Sfp}_X$ .

**Remarks 3.3.2.** (1) In terms of charts, Definition 3.3.1 (i) concretely means that  $f$  is locally sfp if étale locally on  $X$  and  $Y$  it admits a chart (the horizontal maps are strict)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A}_Q \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \vartheta \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A}_P \end{array}$$

such that  $\vartheta : P \rightarrow Q$  is an sfp monoid homomorphism and the natural map

$$Y \longrightarrow X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$$

is (strict and) of finite presentation. Note that the saturated fibre product  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P}^{\text{sat}} \mathbb{A}_Q$  exists by Lemma 3.1.9 and agrees with  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$ .

- (2) For an sfp morphism  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  of prelog rings the induced map

$$\text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B) \longrightarrow \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$$

is an sfp morphism.

- (3) A strict morphism  $Y \rightarrow X$  is locally sfp if and only if it is locally of finite presentation as a morphism of schemes (this is not immediate; see Lemma 3.4.6).
- (4) If  $X$  is an fs log scheme, the sfp morphisms  $Y \rightarrow X$  coincide with the morphisms of finite presentation of fs log schemes. This follows at once from Proposition 2.2.9.
- (5) The notion of a locally sfp map is étale local on source and target. More precisely, if  $f : Y \rightarrow X$  is locally sfp and

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \longleftarrow & V \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow f_V \\ X & \longleftarrow & U \end{array}$$

a commutative diagram (not necessarily cartesian) with horizontal maps strict and étale, then  $f_V$  is also locally sfp. And if

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \longleftarrow & V_i \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow f_i \\ X & \longleftarrow & U_i \end{array}$$

are commutative squares as above where  $\{U_i \rightarrow X\}$  and  $\{V_i \rightarrow Y\}$  form strict étale covers, and the maps  $f_i$  are locally sfp, then so is  $f$ .

- (6) The base change of a (locally) sfp morphism by a strict morphism is again (locally) sfp.

**Proposition 3.3.3.** *Let  $f : Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism of saturated quasi-coherent log schemes. Then the following are equivalent.*

- (i) *The morphism  $f$  is locally sfp.*
- (ii) *For every strict étale map  $U = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow X$ , the map  $V = Y \times_X U \rightarrow U$  locally on  $V$  is of the form  $\text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  for an sfp map of prelog rings*

$$(P \rightarrow A) \longrightarrow (Q \rightarrow B).$$

- (iii) *For every strict étale map  $U = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow X$  and every filtered colimit of saturated prelog rings  $(P \rightarrow A) = \varinjlim (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  the following holds.*

The map  $V = Y \times_X U \rightarrow U$  locally on  $V$  is, for large enough  $i$ , the saturated base change of  $\mathrm{Spec}(Q_i \rightarrow B_i) \rightarrow \mathrm{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  for an sfp map  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i) \rightarrow (Q_i \rightarrow B_i)$  of saturated prelog rings.

Diagram for visual aid:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \longleftarrow & V & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Spec}(Q_i \rightarrow B_i) \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longleftarrow & U = \mathrm{Spec}(P \rightarrow A) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i) \end{array}$$

(iv) Étale locally on  $X$  and  $Y$  the morphism  $f$  fits into a cartesian diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow f_0 \\ X & \longrightarrow & X_0 \end{array}$$

in the category of saturated log schemes where the right hand vertical map is a morphism of fs log schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

(v) Étale locally on  $X$  and  $Y$  the morphism  $f$  fits into a cartesian diagram as above where the right hand vertical map is a morphism of finite presentation of fs log schemes.

*Proof.* We shall prove

$$(i) \Rightarrow (v) \Rightarrow (ii) \Rightarrow (i) \quad \text{and} \quad (ii) \Rightarrow (iii) \Rightarrow (iv) \Rightarrow (v).$$

(i)  $\Rightarrow$  (v): We may work étale locally on  $X$  and  $Y$  and assume that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is given by an sfp morphism  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  of prelog rings. Choose a presentation

$$(P \rightarrow A) = \varinjlim_i (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$$

as a filtered colimit where the  $P_i$  are fs monoids. The proof now follows by applying Proposition 3.2.5 because the monoid  $Q_i$  is fs for a prelog ring  $(Q_i \rightarrow B_i)$  that is sfp over a prelog ring  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  with  $P_i$  an fs monoid, see Proposition 2.2.9.

(v)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii): If assertion (ii) holds for all  $U'_\alpha = \mathrm{Spec}(P' \rightarrow A') \rightarrow U \rightarrow X$  with an étale covering  $\{U'_\alpha \rightarrow U\}$  induced by maps of prelog rings  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (P'_\alpha \rightarrow A'_\alpha)$ , then it also holds for  $U \rightarrow X$ . We may therefore work étale locally on  $X$  and  $Y$ , assume that  $X = U = \mathrm{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  and that there is a cartesian diagram as in (v). Moreover, by further localising, because maps between fs log schemes have the chart lifting property for fs charts, we may assume that  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  is the map associated to a map  $(P_0 \rightarrow A_0) \rightarrow (Q_0 \rightarrow B_0)$  of prelog rings with  $P_0$  and  $Q_0$  being fs monoids.

We write  $P = \varinjlim_i P_i$  as a filtered colimit of fs monoids  $P_i$ , and we set  $X_i = \mathrm{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A)$ . Then  $X = \varinjlim_i X_i$  and  $\mathcal{M}(X) = \varinjlim_i \mathcal{M}_{X_i}(X_i)$  since we evaluate on an affine scheme  $\mathrm{Spec}(A)$ . Since  $P_0$  is a compact object in saturated monoids, the map  $X \rightarrow X_0$  given on log structures by  $P_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  factors, for  $i$  large enough, via a morphism  $P_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{X_i}(X_i)$  and leading to a factorisation  $X_i \rightarrow X_0$ . Here we use that  $X \rightarrow X_i$  is an isomorphism on underlying schemes.

We denote by  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  the saturated base change of  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$ . Note that these are fs log schemes and the map  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  is of finite presentation. We therefore have chart lifting for  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  and fs charts. Working locally on  $Y_i$  we may thus assume that  $Y_i = \mathrm{Spec}(Q_i \rightarrow B)$  for a map  $(P_i \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q_i \rightarrow B)$  of prelog rings. Then  $Y$  is the saturated base change of a diagram of affine charted log schemes with charted morphisms. Hence  $Y$  itself is of the form  $\mathrm{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B)$  and  $Y \rightarrow X$  comes from a map of prelog rings  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$ , where  $P \rightarrow Q$  is the saturated base change of  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$ , hence is sfp, because  $P_i$  and  $Q_i$  are fs.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i): This is obvious from the definition of locally sfp morphisms of saturated log schemes.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii): By (ii) we may assume that the map  $Y \rightarrow X$  is induced by an sfp morphism  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  of prelog rings. The claim in this affine charted case then was proven already in Proposition 3.2.5.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv): This follows since étale locally  $X$  is of the form  $\text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$ , and  $(P \rightarrow A)$  can be written as the direct limit of prelog rings  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  with  $P_i$  fs and  $A_i$  of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . In this case, the maps  $\text{Spec}(Q_i \rightarrow B_i) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  are morphisms of fs log schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v): This is obvious since every morphism between schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  is of finite presentation.  $\square$

In particular, characterization (ii) of locally sfp maps implies:

**Corollary 3.3.4.** *Every locally sfp map of saturated log schemes has the chart lifting property (Remark 3.1.3).*

**Proposition 3.3.5.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a locally sfp morphism of saturated log schemes.*

- (a) *Let  $h: X' \rightarrow X$  be a morphism from a saturated log scheme  $X'$  ( $h$  is not necessarily locally charted). Then the saturated pullback  $Y' = X' \times_X^{\text{sat}} Y$  exists and the morphism  $Y' \rightarrow X'$  is locally sfp.*
- (b) *Let  $g: Z \rightarrow Y$  be another locally sfp morphism of saturated log schemes. Then the composition  $Z \rightarrow Y \rightarrow X$  is locally sfp.*
- (c) *Let  $g: Z \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism from a saturated log scheme  $Z$  such that the composition  $Z \rightarrow Y \rightarrow X$  is locally sfp. Then  $Z \rightarrow Y$  is locally sfp.*

*Proof.* (a): Working étale locally on  $X, Y$  and  $X'$ , we may assume that there exists a commutative square as in Proposition 3.3.3 (v):  $Y \rightarrow X$  is the saturated base change of a map of finite presentation  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  of fs log schemes along  $X \rightarrow X_0$ . So  $Y' \rightarrow X'$  is the saturated base change of  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  along the composition  $X' \rightarrow X_0$  which exists by Lemma 3.1.9 (2). Being a saturated base change of  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  shows by Proposition 3.3.3 that  $Y' \rightarrow X'$  is locally sfp.

(b): The assertion is local on  $X, Y$  and  $Z$ . We may therefore assume that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is isomorphic to the spectrum of an sfp map  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  of saturated prelog rings. By Proposition 3.3.3 (ii), locally on  $Z$  the map  $Z \rightarrow Y = \text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B)$  is induced by an sfp morphism  $(Q \rightarrow B) \rightarrow (R \rightarrow C)$ . Thus the composition  $Z \rightarrow X$  is induced by the composition

$$(P \rightarrow A) \longrightarrow (Q \rightarrow B) \longrightarrow (R \rightarrow C)$$

which is again an sfp morphism of prelog rings, see Corollary 3.2.4. This shows that  $Z \rightarrow X$  is locally sfp.

(c): The map  $g$  factors as  $Z \rightarrow Z \times_X^{\text{sat}} Y \rightarrow Y$  which is the composition of the graph map and the base change of  $Z \rightarrow X$ . The graph map is the base change of the relative diagonal  $\Delta_{Y/X}: Y \rightarrow Y \times_X^{\text{sat}} Y$ . So by (a) and (b) the claim follows from the special case of  $\Delta_{Y/X}$  as a map between saturated log schemes that are locally sfp over  $Y$ .

To study the diagonal we may work étale locally on  $Y$  and  $X$ . By Proposition 3.3.3 we may assume that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is the saturated base change of a map  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  of finite presentation between fs log schemes. Here the diagonal  $\Delta_0: Y_0 \rightarrow Y_0 \times_{X_0}^{\text{sat}} Y_0$  is of finite presentation between fs log schemes and thus sfp. The diagonal  $\Delta_{Y/X}$  is the saturated base change of  $\Delta_0$  and thus by (a) also sfp.  $\square$

**3.4. Approximation of sfp maps.** In this subsection, we provide approximation results for sfp morphisms, in the spirit of [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>, §8]. This is a delicate task, since sfp maps are in general not of finite presentation as maps of schemes, and because we use saturated base change, which does not always agree with the scheme-theoretic base change.

We first deal with the case of an affine charted base. Let  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i)_{i \in I}$  be a directed system of prelog rings with  $P_i$  fs and  $A_i$  of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  and let  $(P \rightarrow A) = \varinjlim (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$ . Set  $X = \operatorname{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  and  $X_i = \operatorname{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$ .

Recall that  $\mathbf{Sfp}_X$  denotes the category of sfp morphisms  $Y \rightarrow X$ . Note that, since each  $X_i$  is fs and of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ , the category  $\mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i}$  consists of fs log schemes  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  whose underlying morphism of schemes is of finite type. For  $j \geq i$ , saturated base change along  $X_j \rightarrow X_i$  induces a functor  $\mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sfp}_{X_j}$ , turning  $\{\mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i}\}_{i \in I}$  into a directed system of categories.

**Proposition 3.4.1.** *Saturated base change along  $X \rightarrow X_i$  induces an equivalence of categories*

$$\varinjlim \mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sfp}_X.$$

We start with some easy category theory. Consider a category  $\mathcal{C}$  admitting small colimits and a map of inductive systems  $\{P_i \rightarrow Q_i\}$  indexed by a directed set  $I$ . We say that such a map is **cocartesian** if for every  $j > i$  the natural square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q_j & \longleftarrow & Q_i \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P_j & \longleftarrow & P_i \end{array}$$

is cocartesian. Suppose  $\{P_i \rightarrow Q_i\}$  is cocartesian. If  $P = \varinjlim P_i$  and  $Q = \varinjlim Q_i$  then for every  $i \in I$  the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longleftarrow & Q_i \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ P & \longleftarrow & P_i \end{array}$$

is cocartesian as well. This means that for every morphism  $P \rightarrow R$  and every  $i$  we have

$$\operatorname{Hom}_P(Q, R) = \operatorname{Hom}_{P_i}(Q_i, R).$$

**Lemma 3.4.2.** *Let  $I$  be a directed set,  $\mathcal{C}$  a category with small colimits, and let  $\{P_i \rightarrow Q_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a cocartesian map of inductive systems such that  $Q_0$  is a compact object of  $\mathcal{C}_{/P_0}$  for some  $0 \in I$ . Let  $\{P_i \rightarrow R_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an arbitrary map of inductive systems. Set  $P = \varinjlim P_i$ ,  $Q = \varinjlim Q_i$ , and  $R = \varinjlim R_i$ . Then*

$$\varinjlim \operatorname{Hom}_{P_i}(Q_i, R_i) \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{Hom}_P(Q, R).$$

*Proof.* We compute

$$\operatorname{Hom}_P(Q, R) = \operatorname{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, R) = \operatorname{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, \varinjlim R_i)$$

which, because  $Q_0$  is compact and  $\{P_i \rightarrow Q_i\}_{i \in I}$  is cocartesian, equals

$$\varinjlim \operatorname{Hom}_{P_0}(Q_0, R_i) = \varinjlim \operatorname{Hom}_{P_i}(Q_i, R_i). \quad \square$$

Lemma 3.4.2 will be used to obtain fully faithfulness in the proof below.

*Proof of Proposition 3.4.1.* We first prove establish fully faithfulness, and then essential surjectivity.

**Proof of fully faithfulness.** Let  $0 \in I$  be an index and let  $Y_0$  and  $Z_0$  be objects of  $\mathbf{Sfp}_{X_0}$ . We must show that

$$\varinjlim_{i \geq 0} \operatorname{Hom}_{X_i}(Z_i, Y_i) \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{Hom}_X(Z, Y), \quad (3.4.1)$$

where  $Z_i, Y_i$  (resp.  $Z, Y$ ) are defined for all  $i \geq 0$  by saturated base change of  $Y_0$  and  $Z_0$  to  $X_i$  (resp. to  $X$ ).

Let us call  $Y_0$  **special** if it is of the form  $Y_0 = \text{Spec}(Q_0 \rightarrow B_0)$  where  $(Q_0 \rightarrow B_0)$  is a compact object in the category of saturated prelog rings over  $(P_0 \rightarrow A_0)$ . Recall from Proposition 3.2.1 that this means that  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  is sfp and  $A_0 \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P_0]} \mathbb{Z}[Q_0] \rightarrow B_0$  is of finite presentation, thus every sfp  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  is locally of this form.

*Step 1: (3.4.1) holds assuming  $Y_0$  is special.*

If  $Y_0 = \text{Spec}(Q_0 \rightarrow B_0)$  is special, then compactness of  $(Q_0 \rightarrow B_0)$  combined with Lemma 3.4.2 and Lemma 3.2.6 together imply that (in the cofinal subsystem  $i \geq 0$ )

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_X(Z, Y) &= \text{Hom}_{(P \rightarrow A)}((Q \rightarrow B), (\mathcal{M}_Z(Z) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Z(Z))) \\ &= \text{Hom}_{\varinjlim (P_i \rightarrow A_i)}(\varinjlim (Q_i \rightarrow B_i), \varinjlim (\mathcal{M}_{Z_i}(Z_i) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Z_i}(Z_i))) \\ &= \varinjlim \text{Hom}_{(P_i \rightarrow A_i)}((Q_i \rightarrow B_i), (\mathcal{M}_{Z_i}(Z_i) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Z_i}(Z_i))) \\ &= \varinjlim \text{Hom}_{X_i}(Z_i, Y_i). \end{aligned}$$

Here, we used the fact that, since  $Z$  is qcqs, we have

$$(\mathcal{M}_Z(Z) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Z(Z)) = \varinjlim (\mathcal{M}_{Z_i}(Z_i) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{Z_i}(Z_i)),$$

(see Lemma 3.4.3 below).

*Step 2: (3.4.1) holds assuming  $Y_0$  is a disjoint union of special objects.*

Next, suppose that  $Y_0$  is the disjoint union of a (finite) number of special objects  $\{Y_0^\alpha\}_{\alpha \in A}$ . We treat the index set  $A$  as a discrete space. Then

$$\text{Hom}_{X_i}(Z_i, Y_i) = \prod_{a: |Z_i| \rightarrow A} \prod_{\alpha} \text{Hom}_{X_i}(a^{-1}(\alpha), Y_i^\alpha),$$

and the same with  $\text{Hom}_X(Z, Y)$ . To pass to the limit observe that since  $|Z| = \varprojlim |Z_i|$  (inverse limit of spectral spaces with quasi-compact transition maps), every locally constant function  $|Z| \rightarrow A$  factors through one of the projections  $\pi_j: |Z| \rightarrow |Z_j|$  (see [SP, Lemma 0A2Y]). Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_X(Z, Y) &= \prod_{a: |Z| \rightarrow A} \prod_{\alpha} \text{Hom}_X(a^{-1}(\alpha), Y^\alpha) \\ &= \varinjlim_j \prod_{a: |Z_j| \rightarrow A} \prod_{\alpha} \text{Hom}_X(\pi_j^{-1} a^{-1}(\alpha), Y^\alpha) \\ &= \varinjlim_j \prod_{a: |Z_j| \rightarrow A} \prod_{\alpha} \varinjlim_{i \geq j} \text{Hom}_{X_i}(\pi_{ij}^{-1} a^{-1}(\alpha), Y_i^\alpha) \\ &= \varinjlim_i \prod_{a: |Z_i| \rightarrow A} \prod_{\alpha} \text{Hom}_{X_i}(a^{-1}(\alpha), Y_i^\alpha) \\ &= \varinjlim_i \text{Hom}_{X_i}(Z_i, Y_i). \end{aligned}$$

Here, for  $i \geq j$  we denoted by  $\pi_{ij}$  the map  $X_i \rightarrow X_j$ . In the fourth equality, we commute the filtered colimit  $\varinjlim_{i \geq j}$  past the finite limit  $\prod_{\alpha}$ , then past the colimit  $\prod_a$ , and finally  $\varinjlim_j \varinjlim_{i \geq j}$  is the same as  $\varinjlim_i$ .

*Step 3: (3.4.1) holds in general.*

Now, consider the general case. We pick a strict étale surjection  $U_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  with  $U_0$  a finite disjoint union of special objects, and a strict étale surjection  $U'_0 \rightarrow U_0 \times_{Y_0} U_0$  with  $U'_0$  a finite disjoint union of special objects. Define  $U_i = U_0 \times_{Y_0} Y_i$  and  $U = U_0 \times_{Y_0} Y$ , and analogously with  $U'_i$  and  $U'$ . Then  $Y_i$  is the coequalizer of  $U'_i \rightrightarrows U_i$  (in sheaves on the big étale site of  $\underline{X}$ ) where the two maps are strict étale. Let  $f: Z \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism over  $X$ . We will show that there exists a morphism  $f_i: Z_i \rightarrow Y_i$  inducing  $f$ , and that any two such  $f_i$  become equal after base



change to  $X_j$  for  $j \gg i$ . Let  $V = Z \times_Y U$  and  $V' = Z \times_Y U'$ . Then  $Z$  is the coequalizer of the two strict étale maps  $V' \rightrightarrows V$ . Since  $Z = \varprojlim Z_i$  as schemes, we may assume that there exists a coequalizer diagram  $V'_0 \rightrightarrows V_0 \rightarrow Z_0$  of strict étale maps whose base change is  $V' \rightrightarrows V \rightarrow Z$ . Since  $U_0$  is the disjoint union of special objects, the result of the previous paragraph applied to  $V \rightarrow U$  produces an (essentially unique) map  $g_i: V_i \rightarrow U_i$  inducing  $V \rightarrow U$ . Similarly, we obtain a map  $g'_i: V'_i \rightarrow U'_i$ . Diagrams for visual aid:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V'_i & \xrightleftharpoons[t]{s} & V_i \longrightarrow Z_i \\ g'_i \downarrow & & \downarrow g_i \quad \downarrow f_i? \\ U'_i & \xrightleftharpoons[t]{s} & U_i \longrightarrow Y_i \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} V' & \xrightleftharpoons[t]{s} & V \longrightarrow Z \\ g' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \quad \downarrow f \\ U' & \xrightleftharpoons[t]{s} & U \longrightarrow Y. \end{array}$$

Looking at the four compositions in the left square

$$g_i s, \quad s g'_i, \quad g_i t, \quad t g'_i : V'_i \longrightarrow U_i,$$

since  $gs = sg'$  and  $gt = tg'$ , we must have  $g_i s = s g'_i$  and  $g_i t = t g'_i$  for  $i \gg 0$ . We have thus obtained a natural transformation between the two  $(\bullet \rightrightarrows \bullet)$ -shaped diagrams, yielding a map  $f_i: Z_i \rightarrow Y_i$  between their coequalizers. It is clear from the construction that  $f$  is the base change of  $f_i$  to  $X$ . Moreover, retracing the argument, we see that any two solutions to this problem become equal for  $i \gg 0$ . This finishes the proof of fully faithfulness.

**Proof of essential surjectivity.** Let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be an sfp map. If  $Y$  is special, i.e. of the form  $\text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B)$  for an sfp map  $(P \rightarrow A) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$ , then we have already established in Proposition 3.2.5 that  $Y$  is in the essential image. Therefore finite disjoint unions of special objects are in the image as well. Moreover, if  $U$  is in the essential image and  $V \rightarrow U$  is a strict morphism of finite presentation, then  $V$  is in the essential image as well, simply by the corresponding fact for schemes [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>, Théorème 8.5.2] (and the fact that strict finitely presented maps are sfp).

With these preliminary observations, let  $U \rightarrow Y$  be a strict étale surjection with  $U$  a finite disjoint union of special objects, and let  $R = U \times_Y U$ . Then  $U$  is in the essential image and as the first projection  $R \rightarrow U$  is strict étale, so is  $R$ . Consider the corresponding étale groupoid  $(U, R, s, t, c)$  or rather  $(U, R, s, t, c, e, i)$  with étale maps  $s, t: R \rightarrow U$  (source and target),  $c: R \times_{t, U, s} R \rightarrow R$  (composition),  $e: U \rightarrow R$  (identity), and  $i: R \rightarrow R$  (inverse). All of these are étale morphisms over  $U$ , satisfying certain identities (see [SP, Section 0230]) taking place in maps between some fibre products of  $R$  over  $U$ . Let  $U_i$  and  $R_i$  be sfp over  $X_i$  with saturated base change  $U$  and  $R$ . By fully faithfulness, possibly after increasing  $i$  there exist morphisms  $s_i, t_i: R_i \rightarrow U_i$  etc. (Note that since  $R_i \rightarrow U_i$  is strict étale,  $R_i \times_{U_i} R_i$  is sfp over  $X_i$ , with saturated base change to  $X$  isomorphic to  $R \times_U R$ .) Moreover, the axioms of a groupoid will be satisfied for  $i \gg 0$ .

Let  $Y_i$  be the algebraic stack over  $X_i$  defined by the étale groupoid  $(U_i, R_i, \dots)$ . These form an inverse system with affine transition maps and inverse limit  $Y$ . Moreover,  $Y$  and all  $Y_i$  are qcqs. Since  $Y$  is a scheme, by [Ryd15, Theorem C(iii)] the  $Y_i$  are schemes for  $i \gg 0$ .

Coming back from our brief detour through groupoids and stacks, we establish that for  $i \gg 0$  the coequalizer  $Y_i$  of  $R_i \rightrightarrows U_i$  exists as a scheme. Moreover,  $U_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is an étale surjection and  $R_i = U_i \times_{Y_i} U_i$ . Since log structures form an étale stack, this enables us to construct the log structure on  $Y_i$  for which  $U_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is strict. Then, since the formation of étale coequalizers commutes with base change [SP, Lemma 03I4], we deduce that  $Y$  is the saturated base change of  $Y_i$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.4.3.** *Let  $(X_i)$  be an inverse system of log schemes with affine transition maps and limit  $X$ . Suppose that  $X_i$  are qcqs. Then*

$$\varprojlim \mathcal{M}(X_i) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{M}(X).$$

*Proof.* We have  $\underline{X} = \varprojlim \underline{X}_i$ , and the same with underlying topological spaces. In particular,  $\underline{X}$  is qcqs. We claim that the map of étale sheaves on  $\underline{X}$

$$\varinjlim \pi_i^{-1}(\mathcal{M}_{X_i}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_X$$

is an isomorphism. To this end, first note that since  $\mathcal{O}_X^\times = \varinjlim \pi_i^{-1}(\mathcal{O}_{X_i}^\times)$ , the source (call it  $\mathcal{M}$ ) of the map in question is a log structure. Moreover, the log scheme  $(\underline{X}, \mathcal{M})$  has the universal property of the inverse limit  $\varprojlim \underline{X}_i$ , and hence  $\mathcal{M} \simeq \mathcal{M}_X$ .

Since  $X$  is qcqs, in view of [SP, Lemma 09YN] (see also [SGA 42, Exp. VI, §5]) for any system of sheaves of sets  $\mathcal{F}_i$  on  $X_i$  together with maps  $\pi_{ij}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}_i) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_j$  for  $j \geq i$ , satisfying the natural transitivity property, we have

$$\varinjlim \Gamma(X_i, \mathcal{F}_i) = \Gamma(X, \varinjlim \pi_i^{-1} \mathcal{F}_i).$$

The result follows by taking  $\mathcal{F}_i = \mathcal{M}_{X_i}$ .  $\square$

We can strengthen Proposition 3.4.1 as follows.

**Definition 3.4.4.** We call an inverse system of saturated log schemes  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  **affine charted** if there exists a set  $A$ , direct systems of saturated prelog rings

$$\{(P_{\alpha,i} \rightarrow A_{\alpha,i})\}_{i \in I^{\text{op}}} \quad \text{for } \alpha \in A$$

and strict étale maps forming a morphism of inverse systems

$$f_{\alpha,i}: U_{\alpha,i} = \text{Spec}(P_{\alpha,i} \rightarrow A_{\alpha,i}) \longrightarrow X_i$$

and such that for every index  $i$ , the family  $\{f_{\alpha,i}: U_{\alpha,i} \rightarrow X_i\}_{\alpha \in A}$  is a covering family for the étale topology on  $\underline{X}_i$ .

Note that in particular the transition maps  $X_j \rightarrow X_i$  in an affine charted inverse system are affine. Since affine morphisms are in particular qcqs, if  $X_i$  is qcqs for some index  $i$ , then  $X_j$  ( $j \geq i$ ) and  $X$  are qcqs as well. The inverse limit  $\varprojlim \underline{X}_i$  exists and is a saturated log scheme, and

$$U_\alpha = \text{Spec}(P_\alpha \rightarrow A_\alpha), \quad (P_\alpha \rightarrow A_\alpha) = \varinjlim_{i \in I^{\text{op}}} (P_{\alpha,i} \rightarrow A_{\alpha,i})$$

forms a strict étale cover of  $X$ . Moreover, we have

$$\mathcal{M}_X = \varinjlim_{i \in I^{\text{op}}} \pi_i^{-1}(\mathcal{M}_{X_i})$$

where  $\pi_i: X \rightarrow X_i$  is the projection.

Our main approximation result is the following.

**Theorem 3.4.5.** *Let  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an affine charted system of qcqs saturated log schemes with inverse limit  $X$ . Then, saturated base change induces an equivalence of categories*

$$\varinjlim \mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sfp}_X$$

*Proof.* Since the underlying scheme of  $X$  is the inverse limit of the underlying schemes of  $X_i$ , if  $U \rightarrow X$  is an étale map with  $U$  qcqs, then it descends to  $U_i \rightarrow X_i$ . Then the association  $U \mapsto \varinjlim \mathbf{Sfp}_{U_i}$  defines a stack on the category of qcqs (strict) étale maps  $U \rightarrow X$ . Similarly,  $U \mapsto \mathbf{Sfp}_U$  is a stack, and our functor is the global sections of a morphism of stacks. This implies that we can work locally, and hence we may assume that  $X = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  is the inverse limit of  $X_i = \text{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$ .

Now, Proposition 3.4.1 cannot be applied yet since  $P_i$  might not be fs and  $A_i$  may not be of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . However, let  $J$  be the poset of pairs  $j = (i(j), P'_j \rightarrow A'_j)$  where  $i = i(j) \in I$ , where  $P'_j \subseteq P_{i(j)}$  is a finitely generated (and hence fs) submonoid, and where  $A'_j \subseteq A_{i(j)}$  is a finitely generated  $\mathbb{Z}$ -algebra. We have  $j' = (i(j'), P'_{j'} \rightarrow A'_{j'}) \geq (i(j), P'_j \rightarrow A'_j) = j$  if  $i(j') \geq i(j)$ ,

$P_{i(j)} \rightarrow P_{i(j')}$  sends  $P'_j$  inside  $P'_{j'}$ , and  $A_{i(j)} \rightarrow A_{i(j')}$  sends  $A'_j$  inside  $A'_{j'}$ . Then the projection  $\pi: J \rightarrow I$ ,  $\pi(j) = i(j)$  is monotone and cofinal, thus  $X = \varprojlim_J X'_j$  where  $X'_j = \text{Spec}(P'_j \rightarrow A'_j)$ . Moreover, for every  $i \in I$  we have  $X_i = \varprojlim_{J_i} X'_j$  where  $J_i = \pi^{-1}(i) \subseteq J$ . We then have, by Proposition 3.4.1 applied both to  $X = \varprojlim_J X_i$  and  $X_i = \varprojlim_{J_i} X_j$

$$\mathbf{Sfp}_X = \varprojlim_J \mathbf{Sfp}_{X'_j} = \varprojlim_I \left( \varprojlim_{J_i} \mathbf{Sfp}_{X'_j} \right) = \varprojlim_I \mathbf{Sfp}_{X_i}. \quad \square$$

The following innocent-looking result is surprisingly not so easy to prove.

**Lemma 3.4.6.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a strict map of saturated log schemes. Then  $f$  is (locally) sfp if and only if the underlying morphism of schemes  $\underline{f}: \underline{Y} \rightarrow \underline{X}$  is (locally) of finite presentation.*

*Proof.* The “if” direction is clear. For the converse, suppose that  $f$  is sfp. Working strict étale locally, see [SP, Lemma 05B0], we may assume by Proposition 3.3.3 that we are in the following situation: there is a directed system of prelog rings  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  with  $P_i$  fs and  $A_i$  of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  and direct limit  $(P \rightarrow A)$ , and sfp maps  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i) \rightarrow (Q_i \rightarrow B_i)$  such that

$$(Q_j \rightarrow B_j) = (Q_i \rightarrow B_i) \otimes_{(P_i \rightarrow A_i)}^{\text{sat}} (P_j \rightarrow B_j) \quad \text{for } j \geq i$$

(where  $\otimes^{\text{sat}}$  denotes pushout in the category of saturated prelog rings), with direct limit  $(Q \rightarrow B)$  such that setting  $X_i = \text{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  and  $Y_i = \text{Spec}(Q_i \rightarrow B_i)$  we have

$$(Y \rightarrow X) \simeq (\text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)) \simeq \varprojlim (Y_i \rightarrow X_i).$$

Since  $Y \rightarrow X$  is strict, the map of prelog rings  $(P \rightarrow B) \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow B)$  induces an isomorphism

$$Y = \text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow B) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow B) = \varprojlim \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A \otimes_{A_i} B_i) = \varprojlim Y'_i.$$

of saturated log schemes over  $X$ , where  $Y'_i = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A \otimes_{A_i} B_i)$ . Now, since  $(Q \rightarrow B)$  is a compact object in the category of saturated prelog rings over  $(P \rightarrow A)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_X(\varprojlim Y'_i, Y) &= \text{Hom}_{(P \rightarrow A)}((Q \rightarrow B), \varprojlim (\mathcal{M}(Y'_i) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(Y'_i))) \\ &= \varprojlim \text{Hom}_{(P \rightarrow A)}((Q \rightarrow B), (\mathcal{M}(Y'_i) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(Y'_i))) \\ &= \varprojlim \text{Hom}_X(Y'_i, Y). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the inverse isomorphism  $\varprojlim Y'_i \xrightarrow{\sim} Y$  factors through some  $Y'_i$ . This means that  $Y$  is a retract of  $Y'_i$  for some  $i$ . Thus  $\underline{Y} = \text{Spec}(B)$  is a retract of  $\underline{Y}'_i = \text{Spec}(A \otimes_{A_i} B_i)$ , and since  $A \rightarrow A \otimes_{A_i} B_i$  is of finite presentation, so is  $A \rightarrow B$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 3.4.7.** *Let  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an affine charted system of qcqs saturated log schemes with inverse limit  $X$ . Let  $Z_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  be a morphism between sfp log schemes over  $X_0$ . Then, the saturated base change  $Z \rightarrow Y$  to  $X$  is strict if and only if the saturated base change  $Z_i \rightarrow Y_i$  to  $X_i$  is strict for  $i \gg 0$ .*

*Proof.* If  $Z \rightarrow Y$  is strict, then by Lemma 3.4.6 the underlying map of schemes  $\underline{Z} \rightarrow \underline{Y}$  is of finite presentation. Since  $\underline{Y} = \varprojlim \underline{Y}_i$  (with affine transition maps  $Y_j \rightarrow Y_i$ ), by [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>, Théorème 8.5.2] there exists a morphism of finite presentation  $\underline{Z}'_i \rightarrow \underline{Y}_i$  for some index  $i$  whose base change to  $\underline{Y}$  is  $\underline{Z} \rightarrow \underline{Y}$ . Let  $Z'_i$  be  $\underline{Z}'_i$  with log structure making  $Z'_i \rightarrow Y_i$  strict. Then  $Z'_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is sfp and its (saturated or not) base change to  $X_i$  is  $Z \rightarrow Y$ . Therefore (by the fully faithfulness part of Theorem 3.4.5), after increasing the index  $i$ , there exists an isomorphism  $Z'_i \simeq Z_i$  over  $Y_i$ . Since  $Z'_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is strict, so is  $Z_i \rightarrow Y_i$ . The other direction is clear.  $\square$

**No absolute fs approximation.** A nice complement to the noetherian approximation results of [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>, §8] is the absolute approximation theorem of Thomason–Trobaugh [TT90, Theorem C.9]: every qcqs scheme can be written as the inverse limit of schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  with affine transition maps. Our relative approximation result for sfp maps (Theorem 3.4.5) as well as the fact that every affine charted saturated log scheme  $\mathrm{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  can be written as the inverse limit  $\mathrm{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  where  $P_i$  are fs and  $A_i$  are of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  may suggest that a similar result to the Thomason–Trobaugh approximation theorem could hold for log schemes. For example, one could hope that every saturated qcqs log scheme can be written as the limit of an affine charted inverse system of fs log schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Unfortunately, this is not true, as the following example shows.

**Example 3.4.8.** We start with any noetherian scheme  $X$  covered by two connected opens  $U_+, U_-$  whose intersection  $U = U_+ \cap U_-$  has two connected components  $U_0, U_1$ . For the simplest example, let  $k$  be a connected noetherian ring in which 2 is invertible and let

$$X = \mathrm{Spec}(A), \quad A = k[X, Y]/((Y - X^2 + 1)(Y + X^2 - 1))$$

be the union of two parabolas intersecting in two points  $x_{\pm} = (\pm 1, 0)$ . Let

$$U_{\pm} = X \setminus \{x_{\pm}\} = \mathrm{Spec}(A[1/(X \mp 1)])$$

and let  $U = U_+ \cap U_-$ , which is isomorphic to the disjoint union of two copies  $U_0, U_1$  of  $\mathbb{A}_k^1 \setminus \{\pm 1\}$ .

Consider the saturated log structure on  $X$  constructed in the following way. Let

$$P = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{N}T^n$$

and let  $T: P \rightarrow P$  be the automorphism induced by  $T^n \mapsto T^{n+1}$ . We give  $U_{\pm}$  the log structure charted by the map  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(U_{\pm})$  sending  $P \setminus \{0\}$  to zero. We glue these log structures on  $U_{\pm}$  to a log structure on  $X$  using the identity  $P \rightarrow P$  on  $U_0$  and the automorphism  $T$  on  $U_1$ .

Let us describe the monodromy of the locally constant sheaf  $\mathcal{F} = \overline{\mathcal{M}}_X^{\mathrm{gp}}$ . The nerve of the cover  $X = U_+ \cup U_-$  by two connected opens with intersection  $U = U_0 \sqcup U_1$  with two connected components is homotopy equivalent to  $S^1$  and hence induces a surjection

$$\pi_1^{\mathrm{SGA}3}(X, \bar{x}) \twoheadrightarrow \pi_1(S^1)$$

where  $\pi_1^{\mathrm{SGA}3}(X, \bar{x})$  is *groupe fondamentale élargi* introduced in [SGA3<sub>II</sub>, Exp. X, §6] (see also [BS15, Lemma 7.4.3]). It has the property that the category of locally constant étale sheaves of sets on  $X$  is equivalent to the category of sets endowed with a continuous action of  $\pi_1^{\mathrm{SGA}3}(X, \bar{x})$ . Since  $\mathcal{F}$  is constant on  $U_0$  and  $U_1$ , the monodromy action of  $\pi_1^{\mathrm{SGA}3}(X, \bar{x})$  on  $\mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}}$  factors through  $\pi_1(S^1) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$  with a generator  $T \in \pi_1(S^1)$  acting by the automorphism  $T$  of  $P^{\mathrm{gp}} = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}T^n = \mathbb{Z}[T, T^{-1}]$  according to the glueing instruction for  $\mathcal{F}$ . This endows the stalk  $\mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}}$  with the structure of a free module of rank one under the group algebra  $\mathbb{Z}[\pi_1(S^1)] = \mathbb{Z}[T, T^{-1}]$ .

**Proposition 3.4.9.** *There does not exist an (not necessarily charted!) inverse system  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  with affine transition maps of fs log schemes with inverse limit  $X$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose such a system exists, and let  $\mathcal{M}_i$  be the pull-back log structure along the projection  $X \rightarrow X_i$ , which is again fs. Then  $\mathcal{M}_X = \varinjlim \mathcal{M}_i$  and so  $X = \varinjlim (X, \mathcal{M}_i)$ . We may therefore assume that the underlying scheme of  $X_i$  is  $X$ . Let  $\mathcal{F} = \overline{\mathcal{M}}_X^{\mathrm{gp}}$ , which is a (Zariski) locally constant sheaf with fibre  $\mathbb{Z}[T, T^{-1}]$ , and let  $\mathcal{F}_i = \overline{\mathcal{M}}_i^{\mathrm{gp}}$ . Then  $\mathcal{F} = \varinjlim \mathcal{F}_i$ . We will make use of the following facts:

**Lemma 3.4.10.** *Let  $X$  be a noetherian scheme. We work with étale sheaves of  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules on  $X$ .*

(a) *If  $\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}'$  is a surjection and  $\mathcal{F}$  is constructible, then so is  $\mathcal{F}'$ .*

- (b) A constructible sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  is locally constant if and only if for every specialization between geometric points  $\bar{x} \rightsquigarrow \bar{y}$  of  $X$ , the cospecialization map  $\mathcal{F}_{\bar{y}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}}$  is an isomorphism. Every locally constant sheaf (not necessarily constructible) has this property.
- (c) If  $\mathcal{M}$  is an fs log structure on  $X$ , then the sheaf  $\mathcal{F} = \overline{\mathcal{M}}^{\text{gp}}$  is constructible.
- (d) Moreover, for  $\mathcal{F}$  as in (c), for every specialization  $\bar{x} \rightsquigarrow \bar{y}$  between geometric points of  $X$ , the cospecialization map  $\mathcal{F}_{\bar{y}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}}$  is surjective.

*Proof.* Assertion (a) is [SP, Proposition 09BH]. (b) is [SGA 4<sub>3</sub>, Exp. IX, Proposition 2.11], and (c) and (d) follow from [Ogu18, Theorem II 2.5.4].  $\square$

Let  $\mathcal{F}'_i$  be the image of  $\mathcal{F}_i \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ . Then  $\varinjlim \mathcal{F}'_i \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is an isomorphism (being both injective and surjective). We claim that each  $\mathcal{F}'_i$  is a locally constant constructible sheaf of  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules. Indeed, it is constructible by Lemma 3.4.10 (c) and (a). Moreover, for every specialization  $\bar{x} \rightsquigarrow \bar{y}$  we have a commutative diagram of cospecialization maps

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (\mathcal{F}_i)_{\bar{y}} & \twoheadrightarrow & (\mathcal{F}'_i)_{\bar{y}} & \hookrightarrow & \mathcal{F}_{\bar{y}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \wr \\ (\mathcal{F}_i)_{\bar{x}} & \twoheadrightarrow & (\mathcal{F}'_i)_{\bar{x}} & \hookrightarrow & \mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}} \end{array}$$

Here, the left arrow is surjective by Lemma 3.4.10 (d) and the right map is an isomorphism by Lemma 3.4.10 (b). It follows that the middle vertical arrow is an isomorphism, so  $\mathcal{F}'_i$  is locally constant by Lemma 3.4.10 (b).

We claim that there does not exist an inverse system of étale local systems of finite free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules  $\{\mathcal{F}'_i\}$  on  $X$  with  $\mathcal{F} = \varinjlim \mathcal{F}'_i$ , obtaining a contradiction. As in the construction above, we may assume that  $\mathcal{F}'_i$  is a subsheaf of  $\mathcal{F}$ . Therefore the monodromy representation of  $\pi_1^{\text{SGA}3}(X, \bar{x})$  on the fibre  $\mathcal{F}'_{i, \bar{x}}$  factors through  $\pi_1(S^1)$  and thus yields a  $\mathbb{Z}[T, T^{-1}]$ -submodule of  $\mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}} \simeq \mathbb{Z}[T, T^{-1}]$ . As  $\mathcal{F}'_{i, \bar{x}}$  is of finite rank as a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module, this can only be 0, a contradiction.  $\square$

On the positive side, let us call a saturated log scheme *approximable* if it can be written as the limit of an affine charted inverse system of fs log schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Our Theorem 3.4.5 implies that if  $X$  is approximable and  $Y \rightarrow X$  is sfp, then  $Y$  is approximable as well.

**3.5. Smooth, étale, and Kummer étale maps of log schemes.** We shall now extend the familiar notions of smooth, étale, and Kummer étale maps to arbitrary saturated log schemes.

**Definition 3.5.1** ([Ill02, 1.5, 1.6] in the fs case). A morphism of saturated log schemes  $Y \rightarrow X$  is **smooth** (resp. **étale**, resp. **Kummer étale**) if étale locally on source and target it admits a chart by a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  (with  $\Sigma$  the set of primes non-invertible on  $X$ ) such that the induced strict map

$$Y \longrightarrow X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$$

is smooth (resp. étale, resp. étale). In particular, such a morphism is locally sfp.

**Remark 3.5.2.** The above definitions are very similar to Kato's criteria for smooth and étale morphisms [Kat89, Theorem 3.5]. Proposition 3.5.3 below justifies that these notions are natural. We have refrained from discussing log differentials in this paper. However, we expect that smooth and étale morphisms can be characterized (among locally sfp morphisms) by a suitable infinitesimal lifting property.

**Proposition 3.5.3.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism between saturated log schemes. The following conditions are equivalent.*

- (a) *The morphism  $f$  is smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale).*

- (b) *Locally on  $X$  and  $Y$  there exists a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphism of fs log schemes  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  and a map  $X \rightarrow X_0$  such that  $Y$  is isomorphic to the saturated pullback of  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  along  $X \rightarrow X_0$ .*

*Proof.* This is an analogue of Proposition 3.3.3 for smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphisms. The proof follows along the same lines. Suppose that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale). Étale locally  $Y \rightarrow X$  has a chart with monoid morphism  $P \rightarrow Q$  which by Proposition 2.4.7 is the saturated pushout of a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphism  $P_0 \rightarrow Q_0$  between fs monoids. We put  $P_0$  as an initial monoid of a filtered colimit  $P = \varinjlim_i P_i$  with fs monoids  $P_i$  and with corresponding saturated pushout  $Q_i = (P_i \oplus_{P_0} Q_0)^{\text{sat}}$ . This allows us to write  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$  as a filtered colimit of  $X_i = X_0 \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P_i}} \mathbb{A}_{Q_i}$  so that  $Y$  descends, for  $i$  large enough, to  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P_i}} \mathbb{A}_{Q_i}$  with log structure induced by  $Q_i$ . Lemma 2.4.6 shows that  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  is again a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphism between fs monoids. This shows that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is the saturated base change of a map between fs log schemes with the same property.

The converse direction is easier than in the proof of Proposition 3.3.3 because we already know that the base change of sfp morphisms is sfp. The claim follows from that and Lemma 2.4.6 for stability of the monoid notions under saturated pushout.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.5.4.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be an étale morphism between saturated log schemes. Then the relative diagonal*

$$\Delta_{Y/X}: Y \longrightarrow Y \times_X^{\text{sat}} Y$$

*is a strict open immersion.*

*Proof.* The relative diagonal of a composition  $Z \rightarrow Y \rightarrow X$  is the composition of the relative diagonal and a base change of the relative diagonal:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z & \xrightarrow{\Delta_{Z/Y}} & Z \times_Y^{\text{sat}} Z & \longrightarrow & Y \\ & \searrow \Delta_{Z/X} & \downarrow & & \downarrow \Delta_{Y/X} \\ & & Z \times_X^{\text{sat}} Z & \longrightarrow & Y \times_X^{\text{sat}} Y. \end{array}$$

Since strict open immersions are stable under base change and composition and, moreover, the assertion is strict étale local on  $X$  and  $Y$ , we may assume that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is either (1) strict and étale or (2) of the form  $\text{Spec } R[Q] \rightarrow \text{Spec } R[P]$  for an étale map of saturated monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  (with respect to the set of primes invertible in  $R$ ). In case (1) we note that the diagonal of a strict étale map is strict and an open immersion. In case (2) the diagonal is obtained from the map of monoids

$$(Q \oplus_P Q)^{\text{sat}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}} \oplus Q \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} Q$$

combining the isomorphism of Lemma 2.6.5 with the second projection. The claim follows as the group scheme  $\text{Spec } R[Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}]$  is finite étale over  $\text{Spec } R$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 3.5.5.** *Let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphism between saturated log schemes.*

- (a) *Let  $h: X' \rightarrow X$  be a morphism from a saturated log scheme  $X'$  ( $h$  is not necessarily locally charted). Then the saturated pullback  $Y' = X' \times_X^{\text{sat}} Y$  exists and the morphism  $Y' \rightarrow X'$  is smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale).*
- (b) *Let  $g: Z \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism from a saturated log scheme  $Z$ . If  $Z \rightarrow Y$  is smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) then the composition  $Z \rightarrow Y \rightarrow X$  is smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale).*



- (c) Let  $g: Z \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism from a saturated log scheme  $Z$  such that the composition  $Z \rightarrow Y \rightarrow X$  is étale (resp. Kummer étale). Then  $g: Z \rightarrow Y$  is étale (resp. Kummer étale).

*Proof.* The proof of (a) and (b) are parallel to the proof of Proposition 3.3.5 with Proposition 3.3.3 replaced by Proposition 3.5.3.

As in Proposition 3.3.5, assertion (c) follows from the fact that the relative diagonal  $\Delta_{Y/X}$  is an open immersion, which was proven in Lemma 3.5.4.  $\square$

Finally, we extend the approximation results of §3.4 to smooth, étale, and Kummer étale morphisms.

**Proposition 3.5.6.** *Let  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an affine charted inverse system with limit  $X$  and let  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  be an sfp morphism for  $0 \in I$  the smallest element, and define  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  and  $Y \rightarrow X$  by saturated base change. Suppose that  $X_0$  is quasi-compact. Then, the map  $Y \rightarrow X$  is smooth/étale/Kummer étale if and only if  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  is smooth/étale/Kummer étale for  $i \gg 0$ .*

*Proof.* The “if” part holds since smooth, étale, and Kummer étale maps are stable under base change (Proposition 3.5.5). To show the “only if” part, suppose that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is smooth, étale, or Kummer étale. Since  $X_0$  is quasi-compact and the properties are strict étale local, we may assume that  $X_i = \text{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  and  $X = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$ . Since the assertion is also local on  $Y$ , we may assume that there exists a smooth/Kummer étale morphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  (with respect to primes invertible on  $X$ ) such that  $Y \rightarrow X$  factors through a strict étale morphism  $Y \rightarrow Y' = \text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q])$ . By Corollary 2.4.9, there exists a smooth/étale/Kummer étale homomorphism of monoids  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  inducing  $P \rightarrow Q$  via saturated base change. Thus  $Y'$  is the saturated base change of  $Y'_i = \text{Spec}(Q_i \rightarrow A_i \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P_i]} \mathbb{Z}[Q_i])$ . Increasing  $i$ , by the corresponding fact about étale maps of schemes [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp VII §5] we may assume that  $Y \rightarrow Y'$  is the base change of an étale morphism  $Y''_i \rightarrow Y'_i$ . Then  $Y'_i \rightarrow X_i$  is smooth/étale/Kummer étale and hence so is  $Y''_i \rightarrow X_i$ . Since  $Y''_i$  and  $Y_i$  have the same saturated base change to  $X$ , namely  $Y$ , increasing  $i$  we may assume that  $Y''_i = Y_i$ . So  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  is smooth/étale/Kummer étale.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.5.7.** *Let  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an affine charted inverse system of qcqs saturated log schemes with limit  $X$ . Then saturated base change induces equivalences of categories*

$$\begin{aligned} \varinjlim \mathbf{Sm}_{X_i}^{\text{qcqs}} &\xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sm}_X^{\text{qcqs}} \\ \varinjlim \mathbf{Et}_{X_i}^{\text{qcqs}} &\xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Et}_X^{\text{qcqs}} \\ \varinjlim \mathbf{KEt}_{X_i}^{\text{qcqs}} &\xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{KEt}_X^{\text{qcqs}}, \end{aligned}$$

where we denote the category of smooth/étale/Kummer étale maps with target  $X$  by  $\mathbf{Sm}_X$ ,  $\mathbf{Et}_X$ , and  $\mathbf{KEt}_X$  and the superscript signifies the full subcategories of qcqs objects.

*Proof.* Combine Proposition 3.5.6 with Theorem 3.4.5.  $\square$

This approximation result combined with Kato’s criterion [Kat89, Theorem 3.5] and its variant Lemma 3.5.9 below allows us to obtain the following “chart lifting property” for smooth, étale, and Kummer étale morphisms.

**Proposition 3.5.8.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism between saturated log schemes. The following conditions are equivalent.*

- (a) *The morphism  $f$  is smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale).*
- (b) *For every strict étale  $U \rightarrow X$  and every chart  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(U)$  with a saturated monoid  $P$ , the base change map  $Y_U \rightarrow U$  locally on source and target admits a chart by a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) morphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  (with  $\Sigma$  the set of primes*

*non-invertible on the respective target) such that the induced strict map  $Y_U \rightarrow U \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$  is étale.*

*Proof.* The implication (b)  $\Rightarrow$  (a) is clear. For the converse (a)  $\Rightarrow$  (b) we may assume that  $U = X$  is of the form  $\mathrm{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  and write  $(P \rightarrow A) = \varinjlim (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  with  $P_i$  fs and  $A_i$  of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . By Corollary 3.5.7, there exists, for  $i$  large enough, a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) map  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i = \mathrm{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  whose saturated base change is  $Y \rightarrow X$ . By Kato's criterion [Kat89, Theorem 3.5] and the analogue for Kummer étale in Lemma 3.5.9 below, locally on  $Y_i$  there exists a chart for  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  given by a smooth (resp. étale, resp. Kummer étale) map of monoids  $P_i \rightarrow Q_i$  (with respect to primes non-invertible on  $X_i$ ) such that the induced strict map  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P_i}} \mathbb{A}_{Q_i}$  is étale. Taking saturated base change to  $X$  and  $P$  we obtain the required local chart for  $Y \rightarrow X$ .  $\square$

Above we used the following fact about Kummer étale maps between fs log schemes.

**Lemma 3.5.9.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a Kummer étale map of fs log schemes and let  $\alpha: P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  be an fs chart. Then locally on  $Y$  the chart  $P$  lifts to a chart for  $f$  given by a Kummer étale map of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  such that  $Y \rightarrow X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$  is (strict) étale.*

*Proof.* We will work locally around a geometric point  $\bar{x}$  of  $X$ . Let  $F \subseteq P$  be the preimage of  $\mathcal{O}_{X, \bar{x}}^\times$  and let  $P' = P/F \simeq \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{X, \bar{x}}$ . Then  $P_F \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  is also a chart in a neighbourhood of  $\bar{x}$ . Moreover, if we solve the problem for this chart, then we solve it also for  $P$ . Indeed, if  $P_F \rightarrow Q''$  is a Kummer étale map, we set  $Q$  to be the saturation of  $P$  in  $(Q'')^{\mathrm{gp}}$ . Then  $P \rightarrow Q$  is Kummer étale. Moreover, the maps  $\mathbb{A}_{Q''} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_Q$  and  $\mathbb{A}_{P_F} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  are strict open immersions. We may thus compose  $Y \rightarrow X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P_F}} \mathbb{A}_{Q''}$  with the base change of  $\mathbb{A}_{Q''} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_Q$ .

We may now suppose that  $P = P_F$ , i.e. that  $F = F^{\mathrm{gp}}$ . In this case, since  $P'$  is sharp and hence  $(P')^{\mathrm{gp}}$  is free, we may write  $P = P' \oplus F^{\mathrm{gp}}$ . Then the composition  $P' \rightarrow P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  is also a chart, which is moreover neat at the point  $\bar{x}$ .

By [Sti02, Proposition 3.4.1], the assertion holds for the neat chart  $P' \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$ . More precisely, locally around  $\bar{x}$  and locally on  $Y$  there exists a Kummer étale map of monoids  $P' \rightarrow Q'$  such that  $f$  factors through a strict étale map to  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P'}} \mathbb{A}_{Q'}$ . We may therefore assume without loss of generality that  $Y = X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P'}} \mathbb{A}_{Q'}$ .

Let  $Q = Q' \oplus F^{\mathrm{gp}}$ . Then  $P \rightarrow Q$  is Kummer étale and it remains to prove that  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$  and  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P'}} \mathbb{A}_{Q'}$  are isomorphic over  $X$ . The chart  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  factors through the chart  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_{P'}$  and the strict map  $\mathbb{A}_{P'} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  induced by the projection  $P = P' \oplus F^{\mathrm{gp}} \rightarrow P'$ . Since  $Q' = P' \oplus_P Q$ , we have

$$Y \simeq X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P'}} \mathbb{A}_{Q'} \simeq X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P'}} (\mathbb{A}_{P'} \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q) \simeq X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q. \quad \square$$

**3.6. Appendix: Tsuji's example.** In Remark 3.1.4 we promised a counterexample against the naive approach to constructing charts by global sections of  $\mathcal{M}$ , a potential source of charts in verifying the chart lifting property of a morphism, see Remark 3.1.3. However, this does not work in general.

The following construction, due to Takeshi Tsuji, gives an example of an affine fs log scheme  $C$  (a punctured elliptic curve) for which the identity map  $\mathcal{M}(C) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(C)$  is not a chart.

**Example 3.6.1** (Tsuji). Let  $k$  be an algebraically closed field, let  $E$  be an elliptic curve defined over  $k$ , and let  $x_0 \in E(k)$  be a point of infinite order. Let  $x_1, x_2, x_3$  be the three distinct points  $[-3](x_0)$ ,  $[2](x_0)$ , and  $x_0$ , respectively, where  $[n]$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ) denotes the multiplication by  $n$  on  $E$ . Put  $C = E \setminus \{0\}$ ,  $U = C \setminus \{x_1, x_2, x_3\}$ , and let  $j$  denote the open immersion  $U \hookrightarrow C$ . The scheme  $C$  is affine. We endow it with the compactifying log structure  $\mathcal{M} = \mathcal{O}_C \cap j_* \mathcal{O}_U^\times$  induced by the open subset  $U$ . We set  $M = \mathcal{M}(C)$  to be its global sections and let  $\mathcal{M}'$  be the log structure

induced by the map  $M \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{M}(C) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(C)$ . We will show that the stalk  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}'_{x_1}$  has rank two while  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{x_1} \simeq \mathbb{N}$ . This implies that  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  are not isomorphic as sheaves of monoids on  $C$ .

We first compute  $M = \mathcal{M}(C)$ . Letting  $v_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ) denote the discrete valuation of the function field  $k(C)$  of  $C$  defined by the point  $x_i \in C$ , we have

$$\mathcal{M}(C) = \{g \in \mathcal{O}(U)^\times : v_i(x) \geq 0 \text{ for } i = 1, 2, 3\}.$$

Consider the map  $(v_1, v_2, v_3): \mathcal{M}(C) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}^3$ . For  $h_1, h_2 \in \mathcal{O}(U)^\times$  such that  $v_i(h_1) = v_i(h_2)$  for all  $i = 1, 2, 3$ , we have  $h_1 h_2^{-1} \in \mathcal{O}(E)^\times = k^\times$ . Moreover, for  $(n_1, n_2, n_3) \in \mathbb{Z}^3$ , there exists an  $f \in \mathcal{O}(U)^\times$  such that  $\text{div}(f) = n_1 x_1 + n_2 x_2 + n_3 x_3$  if and only if

$$-3n_1 + 2n_2 + n_3 = 0. \quad (3.6.1)$$

(In particular,  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3$  is a principal divisor, equal to  $\text{div}(g)$  for some function  $g \in \mathcal{O}(C)$ , and  $n \mapsto g^n: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a chart for  $\mathcal{M}$ .) Therefore, by (3.6.1), the map  $(v_1, v_2, v_3): \mathcal{M}(C) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}^3$  induces an isomorphism

$$M/k^\times = \mathcal{M}(C)/k^\times \xrightarrow{\sim} \{(n_1, n_2, n_3) \in \mathbb{N}^3 : -3n_1 + 2n_2 + n_3 = 0\}. \quad (3.6.2)$$

To compute  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}'_{x_1}$ , we note that we have

$$M/\alpha_{x_1}^{-1}(\mathcal{O}_{C,x_1}^\times) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{M}'_{x_1}/\mathcal{O}_{C,x_1}^\times = \overline{\mathcal{M}}'_{x_1}.$$

For  $h \in M$ , we have  $\alpha_{x_1}(h) \in \mathcal{O}_{C,x_1}^\times$  if and only if  $v_1(h) = 0$ . By (3.6.2), the latter implies  $2v_2(h) + v_3(h) = 0$ ,  $v_2(h) \geq 0$ ,  $v_3(h) \geq 0$ , and therefore  $v_2(h) = v_3(h) = 0$ . It follows that  $h \in k^\times$ , and we deduce that

$$\overline{\mathcal{M}}'_{x_1} \simeq M/\alpha_{x_1}^{-1}(\mathcal{O}_{C,x_1}^\times) = M/k^\times,$$

which is the monoid (3.6.2) with groupification  $\mathbb{Z}^2$ . On the other hand, we have  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{x_1} \simeq \mathbb{N}$ . Thus  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  are not isomorphic.

#### 4. THE KUMMER ÉTALE SITE AND FUNDAMENTAL GROUP

In this section, we use the theory of sfp morphisms developed in Section 3 to define the Kummer étale site (§4.1) and the Kummer étale fundamental group (Sections 4.2 and 4.3) of a saturated log scheme  $X$ . In the final §4.4, we exemplify the latter in the case of spectra of valuation rings.

**4.1. The Kummer étale site.** On our way to the Kummer étale fundamental group in §4.3, we first define the Kummer étale site. See [III02] for an overview in the fs case.

**Definition 4.1.1.** The **Kummer étale site**  $X_{\text{két}}$  of a saturated log scheme  $X$  consists of the underlying category of Kummer étale morphisms  $U \rightarrow X$ . The topology on  $X_{\text{két}}$  is defined by saying that a family of maps  $\{f_i: U_i \rightarrow U\}_{i \in I}$  is a covering family if  $|U| = \bigcup_{i \in I} f_i(|U_i|)$ .

We note that for every object  $U \rightarrow X$  of  $X_{\text{két}}$ , the Kummer étale site  $U_{\text{két}}$  is identified with the slice category  $(X_{\text{két}})_{/U}$ . This follows from Proposition 3.5.5 (c).

The axioms of a site for  $X_{\text{két}}$  follow from Proposition 3.5.5 (a) and (b) once we show that the saturated base change of a jointly surjective family is still jointly surjective. For fs log schemes this follows from Nakayama's four point lemma [Nak97, Proposition 2.2.2]. Here we follow Ogus' version for the base change of an exact morphism [Ogu18, III §2.2] of fine integral log schemes [Ogu18, Proposition III 2.2.3].

For the statement below, recall [Ogu18, III §2.2] that a morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  of integral log schemes is **exact** if for every geometric point  $\overline{y} \rightarrow Y$ , the homomorphism of monoids

$$f^*: \mathcal{M}_{X,f(\overline{y})} \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_{Y,\overline{y}} \quad (\text{or, equivalently, } \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{X,f(\overline{y})} \longrightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{Y,\overline{y}})$$

is exact (Definition 2.4.1 (a)). We note the following properties of exact morphisms:

- (1) It follows from Remark 2.4.2(2) that exact morphisms of saturated log schemes are stable under composition and saturated pull-back (whenever it exists, cf. Lemma 3.1.9), and in particular stable under strict pull-back.
- (2) If  $P \rightarrow Q$  is an exact homomorphism of integral monoids, then the morphism  $\mathbb{A}_Q \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  is exact.
- (3) It follows from (1) and (2) that if  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is a morphism of integral log schemes which locally admits a chart by an exact homomorphism of integral monoids, then  $f$  is exact.
- (4) Most importantly, observation (3) implies that Kummer étale maps of saturated log schemes are exact.

**Lemma 4.1.2** (Four point lemma for exact morphisms). *Consider a cartesian diagram in the category of saturated log schemes*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U' & \xrightarrow{h'} & U \\ f' \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ X' & \xrightarrow{h} & X, \end{array}$$

i.e.  $U' = X' \times_X^{\text{sat}} U$ , where the morphism  $f$  is exact and locally sfp. Then, for every pair of points  $u \in U$  and  $x' \in X'$  with  $f(u) = h(x')$  there exists a point  $u' \in U'$  with  $f'(u') = x'$  and  $h'(u') = u$ .

*Proof.* As saturated base change by a strict map commutes with forgetting the log structure, we may reduce to the case where the underlying schemes of  $U$ ,  $X$  and  $X'$  all equal  $\text{Spec}(k)$  for an algebraically closed field  $k$ , and  $f$  and  $h$  are the identity on the underlying scheme. We need to show that the saturated fibre product is non-empty.

We write  $P = \mathcal{M}_X(X)$ ,  $P' = \mathcal{M}_{X'}(X')$  and  $Q = \mathcal{M}_U(U)$ , and  $Q' = P' \oplus_P Q$  for the pushout in monoids. Since by Proposition 3.1.10 the saturation map of an integral log scheme is surjective, we must show that the integral base change

$$X' \times_X^{\text{int}} U = \text{Spec}(Q' \rightarrow k)^{\text{int}}$$

is non-empty. This amounts to showing that the monoid homomorphism  $Q' \rightarrow k$  can be extended to a monoid homomorphism  $Q'^{\text{int}} \rightarrow k$ . Since  $P \rightarrow Q$  is exact and  $P \rightarrow P'$  is local (since  $P^\times = (P')^\times = k^\times$ ), by [Ogu18, Proposition I 4.2.5] we have

$$(Q'^{\text{int}})^\times = P'^\times \oplus_{P^\times} Q^\times = k^\times,$$

and the map  $Q'^{\text{int}} \rightarrow k$  extends this by sending  $Q'^{\text{int}} \setminus (Q'^{\text{int}})^\times$  to 0.  $\square$

Since Kummer étale morphisms are exact, we deduce the following result.

**Corollary 4.1.3.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  and  $g: X' \rightarrow X$  be morphisms of saturated log schemes such that  $f$  is Kummer étale. Let  $f': Y' \rightarrow X'$  be the saturated base change of  $f: Y \rightarrow X$ . Then*

$$f'(Y') = g^{-1}(f(X)).$$

The fact that a quasi-compact (qcqs) log scheme is also quasi-compact (qcqs) in the Kummer étale topology, used later in Proposition 4.1.10(a), requires the following lemma, the fs version of which is [Ill02, Corollary 3.7].

**Lemma 4.1.4.** *Let  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a Kummer étale map between saturated log schemes. Then the underlying map of schemes  $\underline{Y} \rightarrow \underline{X}$  is open.*

*Proof.* Since the (strict) inclusion  $U \subseteq Y$  of an open is Kummer étale, it suffices to show that the image  $f(Y)$  is open in  $X$ . This assertion is local in  $Y$  and  $X$ . We may therefore by Proposition 3.5.3 assume that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is the saturated base change along  $h: X \rightarrow X_0$  of a Kummer étale map  $f_0: Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  between fs log schemes. By [Ill02, Corollary 3.7] the image  $f_0(Y_0)$  is open, and thus by Corollary 4.1.3 also  $f(Y) = h^{-1}(f_0(Y_0))$  is open.  $\square$

Lemma 4.1.4 combined with Corollary 4.1.3 together imply the following analogue of [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>, Théorème 8.10.5(vi)] for Kummer étale maps.

**Corollary 4.1.5.** *Let  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  be an affine charted inverse system of qcqs saturated log schemes with inverse limit  $X$ . Let  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  be a qcqs Kummer étale map for some  $0 \in I$ , and define  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  ( $i \geq 0$ ) and  $Y \rightarrow X$  by saturated base change. Then  $Y \rightarrow X$  is surjective if and only if  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  is surjective for  $i \gg 0$ .*

*Proof.* The “if” direction follows from Corollary 4.1.3. For the “only if” direction, suppose that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is surjective. Let  $U_i \subseteq X_i$  be the image of  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$ . It is a quasi-compact open subset of  $X_i$  by Lemma 4.1.4. Moreover, again by Corollary 4.1.3, we have  $U_j = U_i \times_{X_i} X_j$  for  $j \geq i$ , and  $X = U_i \times_{X_i} X$ . Using [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>, Théorème 8.3.11] (which states that the set of quasi-compact opens of  $X$  is the colimit of the sets of quasi-compact opens of the  $X_i$ ) we conclude that  $U_i = X_i$  for  $i \gg 0$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 4.1.6.** *The Kummer étale site  $X_{\text{két}}$  is subcanonical (representable presheaves are sheaves).*

*Proof.* Let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be a Kummer étale map. We shall prove that the presheaf  $h_Y = \text{Hom}(-, Y)$  on  $X_{\text{két}}$  is a sheaf. By subcanonicity of the usual big étale site of schemes,  $h_Y$  is a sheaf for the topology on  $X_{\text{két}}$  whose coverings are jointly surjective families of strict étale maps. In particular, for every family of objects  $\{V_i\}_{i \in I}$  we have  $h_Y(\coprod V_i) = \prod h_Y(V_i)$ . Arguing as in the proof of [SP, Lemma 022H], in order to prove that  $h_Y$  is a sheaf it is enough to check the sheaf condition for singleton covering families  $\{V \rightarrow U\}$  where  $U$  and  $V$  are affine. We set  $W = V \times_U V$  (in this proof, all fibre products are taken in respective sites, i.e. signify saturated fibre products). We need to show that the diagram below is an equalizer

$$\text{Hom}(U, Y) \longrightarrow \text{Hom}(V, Y) \rightrightarrows \text{Hom}(W, Y) \quad (4.1.1)$$

We do this in several steps.

*Step 1:* (4.1.1) is an equalizer if  $X, Y, U$ , and  $V$  are qcqs, and in addition if  $X$  is the limit of an affine charted inverse system  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  with  $X_i$  fs and qcqs.

By Corollary 3.5.7, the schemes and maps in question are base-changes of analogous ones in some  $X_{i_0, \text{két}}$  and we can write the diagram above as

$$\varinjlim_i \text{Hom}(U_i, Y_i) \longrightarrow \varinjlim_i \text{Hom}(V_i, Y_i) \rightrightarrows \varinjlim_i \text{Hom}(W_i, Y_i).$$

where  $W_i = V_i \times_{U_i} V_i$ . By Corollary 4.1.5, we can assume  $V_i \rightarrow U_i$  is surjective (not just Kummer étale), so a cover. We know subcanonicity in the fs case (cf. [Kat21, Theorem 3.1]), so  $\text{Hom}(U_i, Y_i)$  is the equalizer of  $\text{Hom}(V_i, Y_i) \rightrightarrows \text{Hom}(W_i, Y_i)$ . Now, as filtered colimits commute with equalizers, we finish the proof of this step.

*Step 2:* (4.1.1) is an equalizer if  $X, Y, U$ , and  $V$  are qcqs.

We prove the same assertion as in Step 1, but without assuming that  $X$  can be presented as a limit. Fix a strict étale cover  $\{X_\alpha\}$  of  $X$  such that each  $X_\alpha$  satisfies the assumptions of Step 1 (this is possible by Lemma 3.2.7).

Denote the fibre products  $X_\alpha \times_X X_\beta$  by  $X_{\alpha\beta}$  and similarly for the base-changes of  $U, V$  and  $Y$ . Further cover the fibre products  $X_{\alpha\beta}$  by  $X_\gamma$  that satisfy the assumptions of Step 1. As log schemes (Kummer étale) over  $X$  form a prestack in the strict étale topology, we first get that  $\prod_{\alpha, \beta} \text{Hom}(U_{\alpha\beta}, Y_{\alpha\beta}) \hookrightarrow \prod_\gamma \text{Hom}(U_\gamma, Y_\gamma)$  and then that

$$\text{Hom}(U, Y) \longrightarrow \text{Hom}(U_\alpha, Y_\alpha) \rightrightarrows \prod_\gamma \text{Hom}(U_\gamma, Y_\gamma).$$

is an equalizer. Similar equations hold for  $\text{Hom}(V, Y)$  and  $\text{Hom}(W, Y)$ .

Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\text{Hom}(U, Y) & \longrightarrow & \text{Hom}(V, Y) & \rightrightarrows & \text{Hom}(V \times_U V, Y) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\prod \text{Hom}(U_\alpha, Y_\alpha) & \longrightarrow & \prod \text{Hom}(V_\alpha, Y_\alpha) & \rightrightarrows & \prod \text{Hom}(W_\alpha, Y_\alpha) \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\prod \text{Hom}(U_\gamma, Y_\gamma) & \longrightarrow & \prod \text{Hom}(V_\gamma, Y_\gamma) & \rightrightarrows & \prod \text{Hom}(W_\gamma, Y_\gamma)
\end{array}$$

where each object of the top row is the equalizer in its column and the leftmost elements of the bottom two rows are equalizers. Commuting limits with limits, we see that that the top left element is the equalizer of its row. This finishes the proof of this step.

*Step 3: (4.1.1) is an equalizer in general.*

We now tackle the general case of an arbitrary saturated log scheme  $X$  and  $Y \in X_{\text{két}}$ . By the previous Step, we can assume that  $X$  is as in Step 1. If  $Y \rightarrow X \in X_{\text{két}}$  is qcqs, by previous steps, it follows that  $h_Y$  is a sheaf on  $X_{\text{két}}$ . We now extend it to general  $Y$ .

We prove injectivity of  $h_Y(U) \rightarrow h_Y(V)$ . Let  $f, g: U \rightarrow Y$  be two maps equalized by the map  $\pi: V \rightarrow U$ . To show  $f = g$  it is enough to do so locally around every point  $u \in U$ . Moreover, since  $|V| \rightarrow |U|$  is surjective, we have  $|f| = |g|: |U| \rightarrow |Y|$ . Let  $Y_0 \subseteq Y$  be an affine neighbourhood of  $f(u) = g(u)$ . We may replace  $U$  with  $f^{-1}(Y_0) = g^{-1}(Y_0)$  and then the already established sheaf property of  $h_{Y_0}$  implies the injectivity.

To prove surjectivity, let  $f': V \rightarrow Y$  be a map equalizing  $\pi_1, \pi_2: W \rightarrow V$ . We first note that  $|f'|: |V| \rightarrow |Y|$  factors uniquely through a continuous map  $\varphi: |U| \rightarrow |Y|$ . This follows from the fact that  $|W| \rightarrow |V| \times_{|U|} |V|$  is surjective and that  $|V| \rightarrow |U|$  is a topological quotient map (as it is a surjective open map). Let  $\{Y_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in A}$  be an affine open cover of  $Y$  and let

$$U_\lambda = \varphi^{-1}(Y_\lambda), \quad V_\lambda = \pi^{-1}\varphi^{-1}(Y_\lambda) = (f')^{-1}(Y_\lambda), \quad \text{and} \quad W_\lambda = \pi_1^{-1}(V_\lambda) = V_\lambda \times_{U_\lambda} V_\lambda$$

be their preimages in  $U$ ,  $V$ , and  $W$ , respectively.

Consider the Zariski sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{F}'$ ) on  $U$  (resp.  $V$ ) defined by  $h_Y$ . We have an injection of sheaves  $\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \pi_*(\mathcal{F}')$  and a section  $f'$  of the latter which we want to lift to a section of the former. By the Zariski sheaf property, it is enough to do so locally on every  $U_\lambda$ .

Note that  $Y_\lambda \rightarrow X$  is qcqs (as both are qcqs), so  $h_{Y_\lambda}$  is a sheaf on  $X_{\text{két}}$  by previous steps. Since the restriction of  $f'$  to  $V_\lambda = \pi^{-1}(U_\lambda)$  lies in  $h_{Y_\lambda}(V_\lambda) \subseteq h_Y(V_\lambda) = (\pi_*\mathcal{F}')(U_\lambda)$  and  $h_{Y_\lambda}$  is a sheaf, we get that the diagram

$$h_{Y_\lambda}(U_\lambda) \longrightarrow h_{Y_\lambda}(V_\lambda) \rightrightarrows \prod h_{Y_\lambda}(W_\lambda)$$

is an equalizer. Thus, we obtain a unique  $f_\lambda: U_\lambda \rightarrow Y_\lambda \subseteq Y$  lifting  $f'|_{U_\lambda}$ . This finishes the proof.  $\square$

We have the following version of topological invariance [Vid01]. Since the universal homeomorphism is supposed to be strict, our result is slightly weaker in the fs case, as Vidal allows certain non-strict universal homeomorphisms such as the Frobenius map.

**Proposition 4.1.7** (Topological invariance). *Let  $i: X_0 \rightarrow X$  be a strict morphism of saturated log schemes such that  $\underline{X}_0 \rightarrow \underline{X}$  is a universal homeomorphism. Then the induced functor  $X_{\text{két}} \rightarrow X_{0, \text{két}}$  is an equivalence.*

*Proof.* We first show that the functor is fully faithful. The graph  $Z(f) \subseteq U \times_X^{\text{sat}} V$  of a map  $f: U \rightarrow V$  in  $X_{\text{két}}$  is the saturated base change of the relative diagonal  $\Delta_{V/X}: V \rightarrow V \times_X^{\text{sat}} V$ . It



follows from Lemma 3.5.4 that  $Z(f)$  is a strict open subset of  $W = U \times_X^{\text{sat}} V$  such that the restriction of the first projection  $\text{pr}: Z(f) \rightarrow U$  is an isomorphism. Conversely, any such open in  $W$  is a graph. We denote the base change by  $i$  with an index 0. The map  $\text{Hom}_X(U, V) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{X_0}(U_0, V_0)$  has thus been identified with the map

$$\{Z \subseteq W : \text{open with } \text{pr}: Z \xrightarrow{\sim} U\} \longrightarrow \{Z_0 \subseteq W_0 : \text{open with } \text{pr}_0: Z_0 \xrightarrow{\sim} U_0\}$$

induced by base change. This is clearly injective as the base change  $i_W: W_0 \rightarrow W$  is a universal homeomorphism. It is also surjective, because any  $Z_0$  determines an open  $Z \subseteq W$  such that the induced map  $\text{pr}: Z \rightarrow U$  sits in a commutative square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z_0 & \xrightarrow{i_Z} & Z \\ \text{pr}_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{pr} \\ U_0 & \xrightarrow{i_U} & U, \end{array}$$

where all maps except possibly for  $\text{pr}$  are universal homeomorphisms. Thus  $\text{pr}: Z \rightarrow U$  is Kummer étale and a universal homeomorphism. More precisely, all maps in the diagram induce isomorphisms of étale sites, and three of the maps are strict. Hence also the fourth map  $\text{pr}: Z \rightarrow U$  is strict, and hence strict étale. Being strict étale and a universal homeomorphism, we conclude that  $Z \rightarrow U$  is an isomorphism.

To complete the proof we must show that every Kummer étale  $U_0 \rightarrow X_0$  comes by base change from a Kummer étale  $U \rightarrow X$ . Since we already know the fully faithful part, this amounts to a strict étale local assertion on  $X$  and a Zariski local assertion on  $U_0$ . We may thus assume that  $X$  is affine with a global chart, and  $U_0$  is affine. Since universal homeomorphisms are affine [SP, Lemma 04DE], then also  $X_0$  is affine.

We claim that the assertion is in fact strict étale local on  $U_0$ . Suppose that  $V_0 \rightarrow U_0$  is a strict étale surjection and that  $V_0 = V \times_X X_0$  is in the essential image. Let  $W_0 = V_0 \times_{U_0} V_0$ , then either projection  $W_0 \rightarrow V_0$  is strict étale, and  $V_0 \rightarrow V$  is a universal homeomorphism, therefore there exists a strict étale  $W \rightarrow V$  with  $W_0 = W \times_V V_0 = W \times_X X_0$ . In particular,  $W$  is in the essential image. By fully faithfulness, both morphisms  $W_0 \rightarrow V_0$  extend uniquely to morphisms  $W \rightarrow V$ , and  $W \rightarrow V \times_X V$  is an étale equivalence relation since so is  $W_0 \rightarrow V_0 \times_{X_0} V_0$ . Let  $U$  be the algebraic space  $V/W$  over  $X$ , then its base change to  $X_0$  is  $U_0$ , which is a scheme. Therefore  $U$  is a scheme by Lemma 4.1.8. Thus  $U_0 = U \times_X X_0$  with the induced log structure is in the essential image.

The paragraph above allows us to work strict étale locally on  $U_0$ . We may therefore assume that there exists a Kummer étale homomorphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$  and a strict étale map

$$U_0 \longrightarrow Y_0 = X_0 \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q.$$

Since  $Y_0 = X_0 \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q \rightarrow X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q = Y$  is a universal homeomorphism, there exists a strict étale map  $U \rightarrow Y$  with  $U_0 = U \times_Y Y_0 = U \times_X X_0$ , and we are done.  $\square$

The easy proof above relied on the following annoying lemma.

**Lemma 4.1.8.** *Let  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  be a universal homeomorphism of schemes and let  $U \rightarrow X$  be an algebraic space. If the base change  $U_0$  of  $U$  to  $X_0$  is a scheme, then  $U$  is a scheme.*

*Proof.* Since this is local on  $X$ , we may assume that  $X = \text{Spec}(A)$  is affine. Since universal homeomorphisms are integral and in particular affine, we have that  $X_0 = \text{Spec}(B)$  is affine as well.

Let  $\{V_{0,\alpha}\}$  be an affine open cover of  $U_0$ . Since  $U_0 \rightarrow U$  is a universal homeomorphism of algebraic spaces (meaning that its pullback to any scheme over  $U$  is a (universal) homeomorphism

of schemes), it induces an equivalence between the étale site of  $U$  and the étale site of  $U_0$ . Therefore there exists an étale cover  $\{V_\alpha \rightarrow U\}$  such that  $V_{0,\alpha} = V_\alpha \times_U U_0$  for all  $\alpha$ .

We claim that

- (1) the maps  $V_\alpha \rightarrow U$  are open immersions of algebraic spaces,
- (2)  $V_\alpha$  are affine schemes.

Since the maps  $V_\alpha \rightarrow U$  are jointly surjective, this will imply that  $U$  is a scheme.

Claim (1) can be checked upon pull-back to any scheme  $Y$  over  $U$ . Since  $Y_0 = Y \times_U U_0 \rightarrow Y$  is a universal homeomorphism, the geometric fibres of  $V_\alpha \times_U Y \rightarrow Y$  are the same as the geometric fibres of  $V_{0,\alpha} \times_{U_0} Y_0 \rightarrow Y_0$ , which means that they are of cardinality  $\leq 1$ . By [EGAIV<sub>4</sub>, 17.2.6] this implies that  $V_\alpha \times_U Y \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism, and since it is also étale, it is an open immersion by [SP, Theorem 025G].

Showing (2) means proving the assertion of the lemma with the additional assumption that  $U_0$  is affine. To this end, we will reduce the proof to the situation where we can apply [SP, Lemma 07VP], which states that if  $Y' \rightarrow Y$  is a finite surjective morphism from an affine scheme  $Y'$  to a Noetherian algebraic space  $Y$ , then  $Y$  is an affine scheme as well.

First, we reduce to the case  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  finitely presented. By [SP, Lemma 0EUJ] we may write  $B = \varinjlim B_\lambda$  where  $B_\lambda$  are finitely presented over  $A$  and  $\text{Spec}(B_\lambda) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(A)$  is a universal homeomorphism. Then  $U_0 = \varinjlim (U \times_X \text{Spec}(B_\lambda))$ , and since  $U_0$  is an affine scheme, by [Ryd15, Theorem C] we have that  $U \times_X \text{Spec}(B_\lambda)$  is an affine scheme for  $\lambda \gg 0$ . Therefore we may replace  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  with  $\text{Spec}(B_\lambda) \rightarrow X$ , and hence assume that  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  is finitely presented (and hence finite).

Since  $U$  is homeomorphic to  $U_0$ , it is qcqs, and hence by [Ryd15, Theorem D] we may write  $U = \varprojlim U^i$  where  $U^i$  are algebraic spaces of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$  and the transition maps are affine. Since  $U \rightarrow U^i$  is affine, it suffices to show that  $U^i$  is an affine scheme for  $i \gg 0$ .

Since  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  and hence  $U_0 \rightarrow U$  is of finite presentation, by [Ryd15, Proposition B.2] for  $i \gg 0$  there exists a finitely presented morphism  $U_0^i \rightarrow U^i$  whose base change to  $U$  is  $U_0 \rightarrow U$ . Since  $U_0 \rightarrow U$  is finite and surjective, by [Ryd15, Proposition B.3] by increasing  $i$  we may ensure that  $U_0^i \rightarrow U^i$  is finite and surjective for  $i \gg 0$ . Since  $U_0 = \varprojlim U_0^i$  is an affine scheme, arguing as before we see that increasing  $i$  further we may ensure that  $U_0^i$  is an affine scheme. We can now apply [SP, Lemma 07VP] as promised.  $\square$

**Remark 4.1.9.** It seems we are not far off from answering the following question. Let  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  be a separated universal homeomorphism of algebraic spaces. If  $X_0$  is a scheme, must  $X$  be a scheme as well? What is missing is a global version of [SP, Lemma 0EUJ] over a qcqs algebraic space. Note that the result is well-known if  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  is a closed immersion (see [Con07, Theorem 2.2.5] or [SP, Lemma 0BPW]).

**Proposition 4.1.10.** *Let  $X$  be a qcqs saturated log scheme. Then,*

- (a)  $\mathbf{Sh}(X_{\text{két}})$  is a coherent topos [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VI, §2],
- (b) if  $X = \varprojlim X_i$  is the limit of an affine charted inverse system of qcqs saturated log schemes  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$ , then

$$\mathbf{Sh}(X_{\text{két}}) = \varprojlim \mathbf{Sh}(X_{i,\text{két}})$$

(see [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VI, §8] for inverse limits of topoi and [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VII, §5] for the analogous fact for étale sites of schemes).

*Proof.* (a) This follows in the same way as for the étale site of a scheme ([SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VII, §5]) using the fact that Kummer étale maps are open (Lemma 4.1.4), so that an object whose underlying scheme is qcqs is coherent.

(b) As in [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VII, §5], we replace the Kummer étale site with the restricted Kummer étale site  $X_{\text{két}}^{\text{qcqs}}$  consisting of sfp Kummer étale maps  $Y \rightarrow X$ , with finite covering families. By

Corollary 3.5.7, we see that  $X_{\text{két}}^{\text{qcqs}} = \varinjlim X_{i,\text{két}}^{\text{qcqs}}$  as categories. Moreover, by Corollary 4.1.5, a family of morphisms  $\{Y_\alpha \rightarrow Y\}$  in  $X_{\text{két}}^{\text{qcqs}}$  is a covering family if and only if it is the base change of a covering family  $\{Y_{\alpha,i} \rightarrow Y_i\}$  in  $X_{i,\text{két}}^{\text{qcqs}}$ . This implies that  $X_{\text{két}}^{\text{qcqs}}$  is equivalent to the inductive limit of the sites  $X_{i,\text{két}}^{\text{qcqs}}$  [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VI, 8.2.5], which implies the assertion about topoi by [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VI, 8.2.3].  $\square$

**4.2. Finite Kummer étale maps.** Finite Kummer étale maps are the covering spaces used for defining the Kummer étale fundamental group. Despite their name, they are only finite up to saturation — see Remark 4.2.2 below.

**Definition 4.2.1.** Let  $X$  be a saturated log scheme.

- (1) A morphism  $Y \rightarrow X$  is **finite Kummer étale** if it is Kummer étale (Definition 3.5.1) and if the underlying morphism of schemes is integral.
- (2) The category of finite Kummer étale log schemes over  $X$  is denoted by  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X$ .

**Remark 4.2.2.** The morphism of schemes underlying a finite Kummer étale map need not be finite. We chose to use “finite Kummer étale” for compatibility with established terminology for fs log schemes. Moreover, we are going to show that finite Kummer étale covers capture the monodromy of finite locally constant sheaves, hence the terminology *finite* resonates with that.

We construct an example of a non-finite but finite Kummer étale map from Example 2.5.3 (2). With  $V = (\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z})^+$  the non-negative elements in lexicographic ordering, the map  $V \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}V$  is a chart for a finite Kummer étale map  $\text{Spec } R[\frac{1}{2}V] \rightarrow \text{Spec } R[V]$  as long as 2 is invertible in  $R$ . But this map is not finite, since otherwise  $\frac{1}{2}V$  would be finitely generated over  $V$ . Other examples will be described in Examples 4.4.6 to 4.4.8 when we discuss tame extensions of henselian valued fields in relation to finite Kummer étale covers of their valuation rings.

**Lemma 4.2.3.** *The underlying scheme morphism of a finite Kummer étale map is both open and closed.*

*Proof.* It is closed, because it is integral, and it is open by Lemma 4.1.4.  $\square$

The following proposition gathers some basic properties of finite Kummer étale maps.

**Proposition 4.2.4.** *Let  $X$  be a saturated log scheme.*

- (a) *Finite Kummer étale maps are stable under saturated pullback and composition.*
- (b) *Every morphism between objects of  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X$  is finite Kummer étale.*
- (c)  *$U \mapsto \mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_U$  forms a stack for the strict étale topology on  $X$ .<sup>6</sup>*
- (d) *If  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  is a strict universal homeomorphism, then the induced functor*

$$\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_{X_0}$$

*is an equivalence.*

*Proof.* (a) and (b): We have established these for Kummer étale maps in Proposition 3.5.5, and they hold for integral maps of schemes. To account for the discrepancy between pullback of schemes and saturated pullback, we use the fact that the saturation map is integral (Proposition 3.1.10).

(c): Integral morphisms of schemes  $\underline{Y} \rightarrow \underline{X}$  satisfy étale descent on  $\underline{X}$ . Further, log structures on the scheme  $\underline{Y}$  over  $\underline{X}$  together with an upgrade of  $\underline{Y} \rightarrow \underline{X}$  to a morphism of log schemes  $Y \rightarrow X$  satisfy étale descent on  $\underline{Y}$  (and hence also on  $\underline{X}$ ) basically by definition. Finally, checking that a morphism  $Y \rightarrow X$  is Kummer étale can be done étale locally on  $\underline{X}$ .

(d): Using Proposition 4.1.7 it is enough to show that the morphism of schemes  $Y \rightarrow X$  is integral if and only if its restriction  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  is integral. The “only if” is clear since integral

<sup>6</sup>We will see in Corollary 4.3.7 that it is even a stack in the Kummer étale topology.

morphisms of schemes are stable under base change. For the “if” part, we use the following characterisation [SP, Lemma 01WM]: a morphism of schemes is integral if and only if it is affine and universally closed. Suppose  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  is integral. We may assume  $X$  is affine, and therefore both  $X_0$  and  $Y_0$  are affine. Since  $Y_0 \rightarrow Y$  is a universal homeomorphism, also  $Y$  is affine by [SP, Lemma 01ZT], showing that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is an affine morphism. The fact that  $Y \rightarrow X$  is universally closed follows trivially from  $X_0 \rightarrow X$  being a universal homeomorphism.  $\square$

In order to prove that finite Kummer étale maps can be approximated by *finite* Kummer étale maps, we will need the following scheme-theoretic lemma.

**Lemma 4.2.5.** *Let  $X = \varprojlim_{i \in I} X_i$  and  $Y = \varprojlim_{i \in I} Y_i$  be cofiltered limits of qcqs schemes with affine transition maps. Suppose that we have compatible quasi-finite, separated morphisms*

$$f_i: Y_i \longrightarrow X_i.$$

*with integral diagonal*

$$\Delta_{ij}: Y_j \longrightarrow Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j$$

*for  $j \geq i$  in  $I$ . If the induced morphism  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is integral, then there exists an  $i \in I$  such that  $f_i: Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  is finite.*

*Proof.* For each  $i \in I$  we denote by  $\bar{Y}_i$  the normalization of  $X_i$  in  $Y_i$ . We obtain compatible commutative diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y_i & \xrightarrow{\iota_i} & \bar{Y}_i \\ & \searrow f_i & \swarrow \bar{f}_i \\ & X_i & \end{array}$$

Now Zariski’s main theorem in the version [SP, Lemma 02LR] states that  $\iota_i$  is a quasi-compact open immersion with dense image and  $\bar{f}_i$  is integral. Taking the base change to  $X_j$  for  $j \geq i$  in  $I$  yields a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bar{Y}_i \times_{X_i} X_j \\ & \searrow & \swarrow \\ & X_j & \end{array}$$

The horizontal map remains a quasi-compact open immersion and the right hand vertical map is integral. Using [SP, Lemma 035I] and [SP, Lemma 035J], we obtain a factorisation

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y_j & \xrightarrow{\quad \circ \quad} & \bar{Y}_j \\ \downarrow \Delta_{ij} & & \downarrow \bar{\Delta}_{ij} \\ Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j & \xrightarrow{\quad \circ \quad} & \bar{Y}_i \times_{X_i} X_j \\ & \searrow & \swarrow \\ & X_j & \end{array} \quad (4.2.1)$$

$f_j$    $\bar{f}_j$

and in particular a morphism  $\bar{Y}_j \rightarrow \bar{Y}_i$ .

We claim that the resulting morphism

$$Y \longrightarrow \varprojlim_{i \in I} \bar{Y}_i$$

is an isomorphism. On the one hand,  $Y \rightarrow \bar{Y} = \varprojlim_{i \in I} \bar{Y}_i$  is a cofiltered limit of open immersions with dense image. So  $Y$  is pro-open in  $\bar{Y}$  with dense image. To see the latter assertion, let  $W \subseteq \bar{Y}$  be a non-empty qc open. Such a  $W$  is the preimage of a qc open  $W_i \subseteq \bar{Y}_i$ . We define  $W_j = W_i \times_{\bar{Y}_i} \bar{Y}_j$  for  $j \geq i$ . Then  $W_j \cap Y_j$  is constructible and hence compact in the constructible topology. It is moreover non-empty (as  $Y_i$  is dense in  $\bar{Y}_i$ ), and hence  $W \cap Y = \varprojlim (W_j \cap Y_j)$  is non-empty. Thus  $Y$  intersects every qc open of  $\bar{Y}$  and therefore is dense.

On the other hand,  $Y$  being integral over  $X$  implies that  $Y$  is also integral over  $\varprojlim_{i \in I} \bar{Y}_i$ . Combining both pieces of information we conclude that  $Y \cong \varprojlim_{i \in I} \bar{Y}_i$ .

Let  $Z_i$  be the complement of  $Y_i$  in  $\bar{Y}_i$ . It is closed and thus compact in the constructible topology of  $\bar{Y}_i$ . We want to show that for  $j \rightarrow i$  in  $I$  the transition map  $\bar{Y}_j \rightarrow \bar{Y}_i$  maps  $Z_j$  to  $Z_i$ . Let us go back to diagram (4.2.1) and look at the upper commutative square. The preimage

$$\bar{\Delta}_{ij}^{-1}(Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j)$$

is an open of  $\bar{Y}_j$  containing  $Y_j$  as a dense open subset which is moreover integral over  $Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j$ . But by assumption  $Y_j$  is also integral over  $Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j$  and thus

$$Y_j = \bar{\Delta}_{ij}^{-1}(Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j).$$

This implies that  $Z_j$  is the preimage of the complement of  $Y_i \times_{X_i} X_j$  in  $\bar{Y}_i \times_{X_i} X_j$ , which in turn is the preimage of  $Z_i$  under the projection to  $\bar{Y}_j$ . In particular,  $Z_j$  maps to  $Z_i$ .

By assumption the limit  $\varprojlim_{i \in I} Z_i$  is empty. But  $Z_i$  being compact (in the constructible topology) there has to be  $i \in I$  with  $Z_i = \emptyset$ . In other words this means that  $Y_i = \bar{Y}_i$  is integral over  $X_i$ . But  $Y_i$  is also quasi-finite, hence of finite type, over  $X_i$ . Therefore,  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  is finite.  $\square$

Thanks to the above lemma, we have the following approximation result, which will allow us to easily extend well-known facts about finite Kummer étale maps between fs log schemes to our setting.

**Proposition 4.2.6.** *Let  $(X_i)_{i \in I}$  be an affine charted inverse system of qcqs saturated log schemes with limit  $X$ . Then the saturated base change functors induce an equivalence of categories*

$$\varinjlim \mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_{X_i} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_X.$$

*Proof.* By Corollary 3.5.7, the functor is fully faithful. To show essential surjectivity, let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be a finite Kummer étale map. Again by Corollary 3.5.7, there exists a Kummer étale map  $Y_0 \rightarrow X_0$  for some  $0 \in I$  whose saturated base change is  $Y \rightarrow X$ . It remains to show that for  $i \gg 0$  the maps  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  obtained by saturated pullback along  $X_i \rightarrow X_0$  are integral and hence finite Kummer étale. This is local on  $X$ , and hence we may assume (by definition of an affine charted system) that  $X = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  and  $X_i = \text{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  for a direct system of saturated prelog rings  $(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  with colimit  $(P \rightarrow A)$ .

Suppose first that all  $X_i$  are fs and of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Then the maps  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  are quasi-finite, being finitely presented and étale locally isomorphic to the pull-back of a standard Kummer étale map  $\mathbb{A}_Q \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$ , which is finite. Moreover, since  $Y$  is affine, [TT90, Proposition C.6] (with  $\Lambda = \mathbb{Z}$ ) implies that  $Y_i$  is affine  $i \gg 0$ . In particular, the map  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i$  is separated. Moreover, this map factors into

$$Y_i \longrightarrow Y_0 \times_{X_0} X_i \longrightarrow X_i,$$

where the first morphism is the saturation of the ordinary fibre product. As saturations are integral by Proposition 3.1.10 (2), we are in the position to apply Lemma 4.2.5. This gives us precisely the statement we want to prove.

For the general case, we argue as in the end of the proof of Theorem 3.4.5.  $\square$

The next lemma shows that finite Kummer étale covers are étale locally of a standard form.

**Lemma 4.2.7.** *Let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be a finite Kummer étale map and let  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X)$  be a chart by a saturated monoid  $P$ . Then étale locally on  $X$  there exists a finite collection of Kummer étale maps  $P \rightarrow Q_j$ , for  $j = 1, \dots, r$ , and an isomorphism over  $X$*

$$Y \simeq \coprod_{i=1}^r X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_{Q_j}.$$

*Proof.* Suppose first that  $X = \operatorname{Spec}(P \xrightarrow{\alpha} A)$  is Noetherian and strictly local and that  $P$  fs. Let  $x \in X$  be the closed point. Let  $F = \alpha^{-1}(A^\times)$  and  $P' = P/F = \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{X,x}$ . By [Ogu18, Proposition II 2.3.7],  $X$  admits a neat chart  $P' \rightarrow A$ . By [Sti02, Proposition 3.1.10], the assertion holds for  $X$  equipped with this neat chart. More precisely, if  $Y \rightarrow X$  is a finite Kummer étale map with  $Y$  non-empty and connected, and  $y \in Y$  is the (unique) point above  $x$ , then the homomorphism  $P' \rightarrow Q' = \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{Y,y}$  is Kummer étale and

$$Y \simeq X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P'}} \mathbb{A}_{Q'}.$$

It is therefore enough to express  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P'}} \mathbb{A}_{Q'}$  as  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$  for a Kummer étale map  $P \rightarrow Q$ . Since  $P'$  is fs and sharp, the group  $(P')^{\text{gp}}$  is free, and hence we may write  $P^{\text{gp}} = (P')^{\text{gp}} \oplus F^{\text{gp}}$ . Let  $Q$  be the saturation of  $P$  in  $(Q')^{\text{gp}} \oplus F^{\text{gp}}$ . Let  $Z = X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$ . We check easily that there exists a unique point  $z \in Z$  above  $x$  (in particular, since  $A$  is henselian,  $Z$  is connected), and that  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{Z,z} \simeq Q'$ . Thus, again by [Sti02, Proposition 3.1.10], we have  $Z \simeq Y$  over  $X$ .

Next, suppose that  $X$  is Noetherian and that  $P$  is fs. Let  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$  be a geometric point and let  $A = \mathcal{O}_{X,(\bar{x})}$  be the corresponding strictly henselian local ring. By the above paragraph, we obtain a finite number of Kummer étale homomorphisms  $P \rightarrow Q_j$  and an isomorphism  $\varphi: Y_A \simeq \coprod_j \operatorname{Spec}(A) \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_{Q_j}$ . Expressing  $\operatorname{Spec}(A)$  as the inverse limit of affine (strict) étale neighbourhoods of  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$ , by Proposition 4.2.6 we can spread out  $\varphi$  to one of these neighbourhoods. This shows the assertion for  $X$ .

Finally, we treat the general case. Working strict étale locally, we may assume that  $X$  has the form  $\operatorname{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  and write  $(P \rightarrow A) = \varinjlim (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  where  $P_i$  are fs and  $A_i$  are of finite type over  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be a finite Kummer étale map. By Proposition 4.2.6, there exists an index  $i$  and a finite Kummer étale map  $Y_i \rightarrow X_i = \operatorname{Spec}(P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  whose saturated base change is  $Y \rightarrow X$ . By the previous paragraph, working locally on  $X_i$  we find a finite number of Kummer étale homomorphisms  $P_i \rightarrow Q_{ij}$  ( $j = 1, \dots, r$ ) and an isomorphism  $Y_i \simeq \coprod X_i \times_{\mathbb{A}_{P_i}} \mathbb{A}_{Q_{ij}}$ . Saturated base change to  $X$  then yields the result with  $Q_j = (Q_{ij} \oplus_{P_i} P)^{\text{sat}}$ .  $\square$

**4.3. The Kummer étale fundamental group.** Before defining the Kummer étale fundamental group, we first need to discuss Kummer étale coverings of strictly local log points.

**Proposition 4.3.1.** *Let  $X = \operatorname{Spec}(P \xrightarrow{\alpha} A)$  where  $P$  is a saturated monoid and  $A$  is strictly local whose residue field  $k$  has exponential characteristic  $p$ . Let  $F = \alpha^{-1}(A^\times) \subseteq P$ , and let*

$$P' = P/F = \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{X,\bar{x}}$$

*where  $\bar{x}$  is the closed point of  $X$ . Then, there is an equivalence of categories (constructed explicitly in (4.3.1))*

$$\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X \xrightarrow{\sim} \pi_1(P')\text{-sets}$$

*(see Definition 2.6.6 for the meaning of  $\pi_1(P')$ ).*

The proof will be slightly more involved than in the fs case [Sti02, §3] since we cannot assume the existence of a chart by the monoid  $P'$  (a “neat chart”) and therefore reduce to the case  $P = \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{X,\bar{x}}$ . The issue is that  $X_\infty$  defined in the proof might be disconnected if  $F \neq 0$ , in which case its automorphism group over  $X$  will be too large.



*Proof.* Let  $P_\infty$  be the saturation of  $P$  in  $P_\infty^{\text{gp}} = P^{\text{gp}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ . We set

$$X_\infty = X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_{P_\infty} = \text{Spec}(P_\infty \rightarrow A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[P_\infty]).$$

We pick a section  $\sigma: \text{Spec}(k) \rightarrow X_\infty$  and let  $Y$  be the connected component of  $X_\infty$  containing the image of  $\sigma$ .

Concretely,  $\sigma^*: A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[P_\infty] \rightarrow k$  corresponds to a homomorphism  $\beta: P_\infty \rightarrow k$  making the following diagram commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & P_\infty \\ \alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow \beta \\ A & \xrightarrow{\bar{x}^*} & k. \end{array}$$

By definition of  $P$ , this datum can be interpreted as a compatible choice of prime-to- $p$  roots of  $\bar{x}^* \alpha(q)$  for  $q \in P$ . Let  $F_\infty \subseteq P_\infty$  be the saturation of  $F$  in  $P_\infty$ . Since  $A$  is henselian, for every  $q \in F_\infty$  there exists a unique  $\chi(q) \in A^\times$  lifting  $\beta(q) \in k^\times$  such that  $\chi(q)^m = \alpha(mq)$  for every  $m \geq 1$  such that  $mq \in F$ . In other words, there exists a unique  $\chi: F_\infty \rightarrow A^\times$  making the diagram below commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F & \longrightarrow & F_\infty \\ \alpha|_F \downarrow & \searrow \chi & \downarrow \beta|_{F_\infty} \\ A^\times & \longrightarrow & k^\times. \end{array}$$

The group  $\pi_1(P)$  acts on the log scheme  $X_\infty$ . Namely,  $\gamma \in \pi_1(P) = \text{Hom}(P_\infty^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}}, A^\times)$  sends  $a \otimes q \in A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[P_\infty]$  to

$$\gamma \cdot (a \otimes q) = \gamma(q)a \otimes q \in \mathcal{O}(X_\infty)$$

and  $q \in P_\infty$  to

$$\gamma \cdot q = \gamma(q)q \in \mathcal{M}(X_\infty).$$

The projection  $X_\infty \rightarrow X$  is  $\pi_1(P)$ -invariant.

We claim that the subgroup  $\pi_1(P') \subseteq \pi_1(P)$  stabilizes the point  $y = \sigma(x) \in Y$  (in fact,  $\pi_1(P')$  is the kernel of  $\pi_1(P) \rightarrow \text{Aut}(\pi_0(X_\infty))$ ). This follows from the commutativity of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[P_\infty] & \xrightarrow{\gamma \in \pi_1(P/F)} & A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[P_\infty] \\ & \searrow \sigma^* & \swarrow \sigma^* \\ & k & \end{array}$$

Indeed,  $1 \otimes q \mapsto \gamma(q)1 \otimes q$ ; if  $q \notin F$ , both map to zero in  $k$ , and if  $q \in F$  then both map to one since  $\gamma = 1$  on  $F$ . It follows that  $\pi_1(P')$  acts on  $Y$  and the map  $Y \rightarrow X$  is  $\pi_1(P')$ -invariant.

The action of  $\pi_1(P')$  on  $Y$  allows us to define the desired functor

$$F = \text{Hom}_X(Y, -): \mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X \longrightarrow \pi_1(P')\text{-sets}. \quad (4.3.1)$$

If  $P$  is fs and  $X$  is Noetherian, then  $F$  agrees with the fibre functor constructed in [Sti02, §3]. In particular,  $F$  is an equivalence under these assumptions. We shall use approximation to reduce to this case.

To this end, let us write  $(P \rightarrow A) = \varinjlim (P_i \rightarrow A_i)$  where  $P_i$  are fs and where  $A_i$  are strict henselisations of finite type  $\mathbb{Z}$ -algebras, and such that  $A_i \rightarrow A$  and  $A_i \rightarrow A_j$  are local. For each index  $i$ , we follow the above recipe for constructing  $P'_i, P_{i\infty}, X_{i\infty}$  etc. The maps  $P_i \rightarrow P_j \rightarrow P$  ( $j \geq i$ ) induce maps  $P_{i\infty} \rightarrow P_{j\infty} \rightarrow P_\infty$  and  $X_\infty \rightarrow X_{j\infty} \rightarrow X_{i\infty}$ . We let  $Y_i$  be the connected component of  $X_{i\infty}$  to which  $Y$  maps. We obtain the induced maps  $Y \rightarrow Y_j \rightarrow Y_i$ . Define the functors

$$F_i = \text{Hom}_{X_i}(Y_i, -): \mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_{X_i} \longrightarrow \pi_1(P'_i)\text{-sets}$$

in the same way as  $F$ .

We claim that we have a commutative square of categories and functors

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_X & \xrightarrow{F} & \pi_1(P')\text{-}\mathbf{sets} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \varinjlim \mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_{X_i} & \xrightarrow{(F_i)} & \varinjlim \pi_1(P'_i)\text{-}\mathbf{sets}. \end{array}$$

Note that the left arrow is an equivalence by Proposition 4.2.6. Moreover, since  $P' = \varinjlim P'_i$ , we have  $\pi_1(P') \simeq \varinjlim \pi_1(P'_i)$  and hence the right arrow is an equivalence. Finally, we have already established that the functors  $F_i$  are equivalences. Therefore the existence of the above diagram implies the assertion.

Consider the transition maps  $X_j \rightarrow X_i$  ( $j \geq i$ ). Since  $Y_j$  maps to  $Y_i$ , we have a natural map  $Y_j \rightarrow (Y_i \times_{X_i}^{\text{sat}} X_j)$ . Therefore, if  $\{Z_i\}$  is an object of the category  $\varinjlim \mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_{X_i}$ , then a morphism  $Y_i \rightarrow Z_i$  over  $X_i$  induces a morphism

$$Y_j \longrightarrow Y_i \times_{X_i}^{\text{sat}} X_j \longrightarrow Z_i \times_{X_i}^{\text{sat}} X_j = Z_j.$$

Moreover,  $Y_j \rightarrow Y_i$  is equivariant with respect to the map  $\pi_1(P'_j) \rightarrow \pi_1(P'_i)$ . This shows that the functors  $F_i$  are compatible with base change along  $X_j \rightarrow X_i$  in the obvious way, and hence together induce a functor  $(F_i)$  in the diagram. An analogous argument for the maps  $X \rightarrow X_i$  shows that the square of categories naturally commutes.  $\square$

By a **geometric log point** (or log geometric point) we shall mean a log scheme of the form  $\bar{x} = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow k)$  where  $k$  is a separably closed field and where  $P^{\text{gp}}$  is  $n$ -divisible for every  $n$  invertible in  $k$ . By Proposition 4.3.1, the category  $\mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_{\bar{x}}$  is canonically equivalent to the category of finite sets. Similarly, the category  $\mathbf{Sh}(\bar{x}_{\text{k}\acute{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{t}})$  of Kummer étale sheaves is equivalent to the category of sets. A geometric log point of a log scheme  $X$  is a map  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$  from a geometric log point. Pull-back along such a map produces a point of the Kummer étale topos of  $X$ . It is easy to see that every non-empty saturated log scheme admits a geometric log point, and in fact the Kummer étale topos has enough points. Restricting to the category of finite Kummer étale covers we obtain a fibre functor  $F_{\bar{x}}: \mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_X \rightarrow \mathbf{sets}$ .

The main result of this section is the following.

**Theorem 4.3.2.** *Let  $X$  be a connected saturated log scheme. Then  $\mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_X$  is a Galois category, and for every geometric log point  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$ , the functor  $F_{\bar{x}}$  is a fibre functor.*

In the fs noetherian case see [Ill02, p. 285].

**Definition 4.3.3.** Let  $X$  be a saturated connected log scheme and let  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$  be a geometric log point. We denote by  $\pi_1(X, \bar{x})$  the fundamental group of  $\mathbf{F}\acute{\mathbf{E}}\mathbf{t}_X$  with the fibre functor given by  $\bar{x}$  as base point.

The proof of Theorem 4.3.2 will occupy the rest of this subsection. The strategy is to prove that finite Kummer étale covers correspond to locally constant sheaves of finite sets in the Kummer étale topology, extending the result [Ill02, Proposition 3.13] from the fs case, and then to apply the following general result.

**Proposition 4.3.4** ([Joh77, Proposition 8.42 + Definition 8.43 + Theorem 8.47]). *Let  $\mathcal{X}$  be a connected Grothendieck topos with a point  $x$ . Then, the category  $\mathbf{lcc}(\mathcal{X})$  of locally constant sheaves of finite sets is a Galois category, with fibre functor induced by  $x^*$ .*

**Corollary 4.3.5.** *Let  $X$  be a non-empty connected saturated log scheme. Then the category  $\mathbf{lcc}(X_{\text{k}\acute{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{t}})$  is a Galois category. Every geometric log point of  $X$  induces a fibre functor on this category.*

*Proof.* The topos  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbf{Sh}(X_{\text{két}})$  is connected since

$$H^0(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{Z}) = H^0(X, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}.$$

Moreover, it is a Grothendieck topos, being the topos of sheaves on  $X_{\text{két}}$ . Here, strictly speaking, we should have first chosen a universe  $U$  and consider the  $U$ -Kummer étale site, so that  $X_{\text{két}}$  is small. Proposition 4.3.4 implies the assertion.  $\square$

For the result below, recall from Proposition 4.1.6 that the Kummer étale site is subcanonical, so that  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X$  can be treated as a full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Sh}(X_{\text{két}})$ .

**Proposition 4.3.6.** *The Kummer étale sheaf associated to a finite Kummer étale morphism  $Y \rightarrow X$  is a locally constant sheaf of sets on  $X_{\text{két}}$ . This induces an equivalence*

$$\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X \simeq \mathbf{lcc}(X_{\text{két}}).$$

*Proof.* We first prove that for every finite Kummer étale  $Y \rightarrow X$  the associated representable sheaf is locally constant, with values in finite sets. This assertion is local, so by Lemma 4.2.7 we may assume that  $X = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow A)$  is charted affine and that  $Y$  is standard Kummer étale, i.e. the disjoint union of  $Y_i = \text{Spec}(Q_i \rightarrow A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q_i])$  for a finite collection of Kummer étale homomorphisms  $P \rightarrow Q_i$ . Then Lemma 2.6.5 implies that  $Y_i \times_X^{\text{sat}} Y_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is isomorphic to the disjoint union of finitely many copies of  $Y_i$ . This shows that the Kummer étale sheaf represented by  $Y$  is locally constant, trivialized on  $\coprod^{\text{sat}}(Y_i \rightarrow X)$ .

For the other direction, we must show that every locally constant sheaf of finite sets on  $X_{\text{két}}$  is represented by a finite Kummer étale cover. This again is strict étale local and we may assume  $X = \varprojlim X_i$  as above, and the statement is true for  $X_i$  again by [Ill02, Proposition 3.13]. Proposition 4.1.10 implies then that

$$\mathbf{Sh}(X_{\text{két}}) \simeq \varprojlim \mathbf{Sh}(X_{i,\text{két}}).$$

We claim that this implies that

$$\mathbf{lcc}(X_{\text{két}}) \simeq \varinjlim \mathbf{lcc}(X_{i,\text{két}})$$

(filtered colimit under pullback maps). Indeed, the category of coherent objects of  $\mathbf{Sh}(X)$  is the filtered colimit of the categories of coherent objects of  $\mathbf{Sh}(X_i)$  [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>, Exp. VI, 8.3.13]. It is easy to see that every object of  $\mathbf{lcc}(X_{\text{két}})$  or  $\mathbf{lcc}(X_{i,\text{két}})$  is coherent. It remains to show that if  $\mathcal{F}_0$  is a Kummer étale sheaf on  $X_0$  which is coherent as an object of  $\mathbf{Sh}(X_0)$  and whose pullback  $\mathcal{F}$  to  $X$  belongs to  $\mathbf{lcc}(X_{\text{két}})$ , then the pullback  $\mathcal{F}_i$  of  $\mathcal{F}_0$  is an object of  $\mathbf{lcc}(X_{i,\text{két}})$  for  $i \gg 0$ . Being locally constant means that there exist a finite covering family  $\{Y_\alpha \rightarrow X\}$ , finite sets  $S_\alpha$ , and isomorphisms  $\mathcal{F} \times Y_\alpha \simeq S_\alpha \times Y_\alpha$  over  $Y_\alpha$  (here  $\times$  denotes product in the topos  $\mathbf{Sh}(X_{\text{két}})$ ). Since this is a finite diagram of morphisms and isomorphisms between coherent objects, again it can be descended to some  $X_i$ .  $\square$

Since  $U \mapsto \mathbf{lcc}(U_{\text{két}})$  is trivially a stack in the Kummer étale topology, we immediately deduce the following strengthening of Proposition 4.2.4 (c).

**Corollary 4.3.7.** *The association  $U \mapsto \mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_U$  is a stack for the Kummer étale topology on  $X$ .*

We are now ready to finish the construction of the Kummer étale fundamental group.

*Proof of Theorem 4.3.2.* By Proposition 4.3.6, the category  $\mathbf{F\acute{E}t}_X$  is equivalent to  $\mathbf{lcc}(X_{\text{két}})$ . The latter is a Galois category by Corollary 4.3.5. This identification is compatible with pullback, and a log geometric point induces a point of  $X_{\text{két}}$ , and it follows that  $F_{\bar{x}}$  is a fibre functor.  $\square$

**4.4. Kummer étale coverings and valuation theory.** In this subsection, we show that finite Kummer étale coverings of the spectrum of a valuation ring correspond to tame extensions of the fraction field.

We first discuss the natural log structure on the spectrum of a valuation ring. Let  $K^+$  be a valuation ring with fraction field  $K$ . Endow  $S = \operatorname{Spec}(K^+)$  with the log structure

$$\mathcal{M}_S = \mathcal{O}_S \cap j_* \mathcal{O}_{\operatorname{Spec}(K)}^\times$$

where  $j: \operatorname{Spec}(K) \rightarrow S$  is the inclusion. We call  $\mathcal{M}_S$  the **standard log structure**. Recall that  $K^+$  is **microbial** if it admits an element  $\pi \in K^+$  (called a **pseudouniformizer**) such that  $K = K^+[1/\pi]$ . In this case, the map  $j$  is an open immersion and  $\mathcal{M}_S$  is the compactifying log structure induced by the open subscheme  $\operatorname{Spec}(K) = D(\pi)$ .

By the following Lemma 4.4.1, the inclusion  $M = K^+ \cap K^\times \rightarrow K^+$  provides a chart for this log structure. Note that  $M$  is a valutive monoid (with  $M/M^\times \simeq \Gamma_K^+$ , the non-negative part of the value group of  $K^+$ ).

**Lemma 4.4.1.** *Let  $K^+$  be a valuation ring with fraction field  $K$ . Then, the map  $K^+ \cap K^\times \rightarrow K^+$  is a chart for the standard log structure on  $\operatorname{Spec}(K^+)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $S = \operatorname{Spec}(K^+)$ , let  $\mathcal{M}_S^{\operatorname{std}}$  be the standard log structure, and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be the log structure induced by the chart  $M = K^+ \cap K^\times \rightarrow K^+$ . We want to show that the natural map  $\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_S^{\operatorname{std}}$  is an isomorphism. To this end, it is enough to show that  $\overline{\mathcal{M}} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}_S^{\operatorname{std}}$  is an isomorphism. Let  $\mathfrak{p} \subset K^+$  be a prime ideal, let  $(K_{\mathfrak{p}}^+)^{\operatorname{sh}}$  be a strict henselisation of  $K^+$  at  $\mathfrak{p}$ , and let  $\overline{x} \rightarrow S$  be the corresponding geometric point. Then  $(K_{\mathfrak{p}}^+)^{\operatorname{sh}}$  is a valuation ring with fraction field  $K_{\mathfrak{p}}^{\operatorname{sh}}$  and value group

$$\Gamma_{(K_{\mathfrak{p}}^+)^{\operatorname{sh}}} = \Gamma_{K_{\mathfrak{p}}} = \Gamma_K / C_{\mathfrak{p}}$$

where  $C_{\mathfrak{p}} = (K_{\mathfrak{p}}^+)^{\times} / (K^+)^{\times} \subseteq \Gamma_K$  is the convex subgroup corresponding to  $\mathfrak{p}$ . For the first equality above, see [SP, Lemma 0ASK].

Then  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{\overline{x}} = M / F_{\overline{x}}$  where  $F_{\overline{x}}$  is the preimage of  $\mathcal{O}_{S, \overline{x}}^\times$  under  $M \rightarrow K^+ \rightarrow (K_{\mathfrak{p}}^+)^{\operatorname{sh}}$ . But  $M / F_{\overline{x}}$  is just  $(\Gamma_K / C_{\mathfrak{p}})^+$ . Moreover,

$$\mathcal{M}_{S, \overline{x}}^{\operatorname{std}} = (K_{\mathfrak{p}}^+)^{\operatorname{sh}} \setminus \{0\},$$

and hence

$$\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{S, \overline{x}}^{\operatorname{std}} = \Gamma_{(K_{\mathfrak{p}}^+)^{\operatorname{sh}}}^+.$$

Thus  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{\overline{x}} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{S, \overline{x}}^{\operatorname{std}}$  is an isomorphism.  $\square$

**Remark 4.4.2.** In practice, it is often possible and useful to choose a splitting of the short exact sequence of monoids (or equivalently the short exact sequence of associated groups, see §2.1)

$$1 \longrightarrow (K^+)^{\times} \longrightarrow M \longrightarrow \Gamma_K^+ \longrightarrow 1. \quad (4.4.1)$$

This can be done for example if  $\Gamma_K$  is a free abelian group (notably, in the discretely valued case), or if  $K$  is perfect and strictly henselian (in which case  $(K^+)^{\times}$  is divisible). The resulting map  $\Gamma_K^+ \rightarrow K^+$  is then a chart for the log structure on  $\operatorname{Spec}(K^+)$ .

Recall that a finite separable extension of valued fields  $(L, L^+) / (K, K^+)$  is **tamely ramified** if the extension of strict henselisations  $L^{\operatorname{sh}} / K^{\operatorname{sh}}$  is of degree prime to the residue characteristic exponent of  $K^+$ .

**Proposition 4.4.3.** *Let  $(K, K^+)$  be a henselian valued field and let  $(L, L^+)$  be a finite tamely ramified extension of  $K$ . Endow  $S = \operatorname{Spec}(K^+)$  and  $T = \operatorname{Spec}(L^+)$  with the standard log structures. Then, the map  $T \rightarrow S$  is Kummer étale.*

*Proof.* We use Corollary 4.3.7 and a limit argument to reduce to the case where  $(K, K^+)$  is strictly henselian. By [GR03, Corollary 6.2.14], the extension  $L/K$  is Galois with abelian Galois group of order invertible in  $K^+$ . We may decompose  $L/K$  into a chain of cyclic extensions. When  $L/K$  is cyclic of degree  $n$ , note that  $K^+$  being strictly henselian, all  $n$ -th roots of unity are already contained in  $K$ , and so by Kummer theory we can then choose  $a \in K$  such that

$$L = K(a^{1/n}).$$

Note that  $K^+$  being strictly henselian, all  $n$ -th roots of units of  $K^+$  ( $n$  being coprime to the residue characteristic of  $K^+$ ) are already contained in  $K^+$ . Therefore,  $a$  has to satisfy  $|a| \neq 1$ . Possibly replacing  $a$  with  $1/a$  we may assume that  $a \in K^+$  with  $|a| < 1$ .

Before we can complete the proof, we need the following lemma.

**Lemma 4.4.4.** *In the above situation, we have*

$$L^+ = \left\{ y = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} x_k a^{-k/n} : x_k \in K, |x_k| \leq |a^{k/n}| \right\}.$$

*Proof.* Since  $L = K(a^{1/n})$ , we can write any element  $y$  of  $L^+$  in the form

$$y = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} x_k a^{-k/n}$$

for elements  $x_k \in K$ . The values  $|a^{-k/n}|$  for  $k = 0, \dots, n-1$  represent different classes in  $\Gamma_L/\Gamma_K$ . Therefore, the values  $|x_k a^{-k/n}|$  are pairwise different and we get

$$|y| = \max_k |x_k a^{-k/n}|.$$

So  $y \in L^+$  if and only if

$$|x_k a^{-k/n}| \leq 1 \quad \text{for all } k = 0, \dots, n-1.$$

This proves the claim.  $\square$

Let  $Q$  be the saturation of  $P = K^+ \cap K^\times$  in  $K^\times \cdot (a^{1/n})^\mathbb{Z}$ . Thus  $Q^{\text{gp}}/P^{\text{gp}} \simeq \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ , and by Lemma 2.6.1, the map  $P \rightarrow Q$  is Kummer étale of index prime to the residue characteristic exponent  $p$  of  $K^+$ . Therefore the induced map of log schemes  $\mathbb{A}_Q \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_P$  is Kummer étale over  $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ . We want to show that the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T = \text{Spec}((L^+ \cap L^\times) \rightarrow L^+) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A}_Q \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ S = \text{Spec}(P \rightarrow K^+) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A}_P \end{array}$$

is a pull-back diagram in the category of saturated log schemes, which will imply that the map  $T \rightarrow S$  is Kummer étale. That is, we need to verify that

$$T \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Spec}(Q \rightarrow K^+ \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]).$$

First, we check that  $K^+ \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q] \rightarrow L^+$  is an isomorphism. This map is surjective by Lemma 4.4.4. To show injectivity, we observe first that the map becomes an isomorphism after tensoring with  $K$  over  $K^+$ . It follows that it is enough to show that its source  $K^+ \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[P]} \mathbb{Z}[Q]$  is torsion-free as a  $K^+$ -module. This follows from the fact that, since  $P$  is valuative, the map  $\mathbb{Z}[P] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}[Q]$  is flat by Lemma 2.6.3.

Finally, to compare the log structures, we need to write every element  $y \in L^+ \setminus \{0\}$  as a product of an element of  $Q$  and a unit of  $L^+$ . Above we have represented  $y$  in the form

$$y = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} x_k a^{-k/n}$$

such that  $|x_k| \leq |a^{k/n}|$  for  $k = 0, \dots, n-1$ . Let  $k_0$  be the unique index where  $|x_k a^{-k/n}|$  is maximal. For  $u = y \cdot ((x_{k_0} a^{-k_0/n}))^{-1}$ , the proof of Lemma 4.4.4 established

$$|u| = |y| \cdot |x_{k_0} a^{-k_0/n}|^{-1} = 1.$$

So  $u$  is a unit in  $L^+$  and  $y = u \cdot x_{k_0} a^{-k_0/n}$  is of the desired form.  $\square$

Once we leave the realm of discrete valuation rings, it is very rare that  $L^+$  is finite over  $K^+$  for a tame extension of henselian valued fields  $L/K$ . In fact, we can characterize precisely when that happens. See Lemma 2.5.4 for an analogous result for extensions of valutive monoids, which we use in the proof below.

**Lemma 4.4.5.** *Let  $(K, K^+)$  be a henselian valued field and let  $(L, L^+)$  be a finite tamely ramified extension of  $K$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (a)  $L^+$  is finite over  $K^+$ ,
- (b)  $L^+$  is of finite type over  $K^+$ ,
- (c) one of the following conditions holds.
  - (i) The extension  $L/K$  is unramified.
  - (ii) The maximal ideal of  $K^+$  is principal, and there exists an integer  $n \geq 1$  such that for every generator  $a \in K^+$  of the maximal ideal there exists a finite unramified extension  $K'/K$  such that  $LK' = K'(a^{1/n})$ .
- (a') the monoid  $\Gamma_L^+$  is finite as a  $\Gamma_K^+$ -set,
- (b') the monoid  $\Gamma_L^+$  is finitely generated over  $\Gamma_K^+$ ,
- (c') one of the following conditions holds.
  - (i)  $\Gamma_K = \Gamma_L$ ,
  - (ii)  $\Gamma_K$  is discrete (has a smallest positive element) and there exists an integer  $n \geq 1$  such that  $\Gamma_L = \Gamma_K + \frac{1}{n}\mathbb{Z}\gamma$  where  $\gamma$  is the smallest positive element of  $\Gamma_K$ .

Note that, in particular, a composition of extensions as in (c)(ii) is again of this form.

*Proof.* The equivalence of conditions (a'), (b'), and (c') is the content of Lemma 2.5.4, and the equivalence (a)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (b) follows from the fact that  $K^+ \rightarrow L^+$  is integral.

For (c)  $\Rightarrow$  (a) we note that  $L^+$  is finite over  $K^+$  if  $L/K$  is unramified. In the other case, we remark that we may replace  $K^+$  by a finite étale cover and thus assume that  $L = K(a^{1/n})$  for a generator  $a$  of the maximal ideal of  $K^+$ . Then  $L^+ = K^+[a^{1/n}]$  is generated as a  $K^+$ -module by the elements  $a^{i/n}$  for  $0 \leq i < n$  by Lemma 4.4.4.

It remains to show (a)  $\Rightarrow$  (a') and (c')  $\Rightarrow$  (c).

(a)  $\Rightarrow$  (a'): We first reduce to the case of a cyclic totally ramified extension. To this end, we claim that

- (1) The assertion holds if  $L/K$  is unramified.
- (2) If  $K \subseteq E \subseteq L$  is an intermediate extension, and the assertion holds for  $E/K$  and  $L/E$ , then it holds for  $K/L$ .

Claim (1) follows from the fact that if  $L/K$  is unramified then  $\Gamma_L^+ = \Gamma_K^+$ . For (2), suppose that  $L^+$  is finite over  $K^+$ . In particular it is finite over  $E^+$ . We check that also  $E^+$  is finite over  $K^+$ . Consider the quotient  $L^+/E^+$ , which is a finitely generated  $K^+$ -module. Moreover, it is torsion-free since  $E^+ = E \cap L^+$ . It is therefore free (combine [SP, Lemma 0539], [SP,



[Lemma 0GSE], and [SP, Lemma 00NX]), thus  $E^+$  is a direct summand of  $L^+$  and hence is finite over  $K^+$ . By the assertion (a) $\Rightarrow$ (a') for  $L/E$  and  $E/K$  we get that  $\Gamma_L^+$  is finite as a  $\Gamma_E^+$ -set which in turn is finite as a  $\Gamma_K^+$ -set. Thus  $\Gamma_L^+$  is finite as a  $\Gamma_K^+$ -set. This finishes the proof of (2).

With these reductions, we may assume that  $K$  is strictly henselian and  $L = K(a^{1/n})$  for  $a \in K$  with  $|a| < 1$  and  $n = [L : K]$  prime to the residue characteristic of  $K^+$  (cf. the proof of Proposition 4.4.3). Lemma 4.4.4 implies that  $L^+$ , as a  $K^+$ -module, is the following sum of fractional ideals

$$L^+ \simeq \bigoplus_{k=0}^{n-1} I_k, \quad I_k = \{x_k \in K : |x_k| \leq |a|^{k/n}\}.$$

Thus, if  $L^+$  is finite over  $K^+$ , then each  $I_k$  is finitely generated and hence principal, generated by an element  $y_k \in K$ . This means that  $L^+$  is a free  $K^+$ -module with basis  $y_k a^{-k/n}$ , for  $0 \leq k \leq n-1$ . Since we assumed  $|a| < 1$ , we have  $y_k \in K^+$ . We check that the images  $\gamma_0, \dots, \gamma_{n-1}$  in  $\Gamma_L^+$  of these basis elements  $y_k a^{-k/n}$  generate  $\Gamma_L^+$  as a  $\Gamma_K^+$ -set: let  $\gamma \in \Gamma_L^+$  be the image of  $y \in L^+$ . By the above discussion (see the proof of Lemma 4.4.4) we may take  $y$  of the form  $xa^{-k/n}$  where  $0 \leq k < n$  and  $x \in K^+$ , i.e.  $y \in I_k$ . Thus  $y = zy_k$ , and  $\gamma = \gamma_k + \zeta$  where  $\zeta \in \Gamma_K^+$  is the image of  $z$ .

(c') $\Rightarrow$ (c): We may pass to strict henselisations as in the proof of Proposition 4.4.3. If  $\Gamma_K = \Gamma_L$ , then  $L = K$  because by [GR03, Corollary 6.2.14] the extension  $L/K$  is Galois with trivial Galois group.

Suppose now  $\Gamma_K \neq \Gamma_L$  and let  $\gamma \in \Gamma_K^+$  be the smallest positive element. Then  $\frac{1}{n}\gamma$  is the smallest positive element of  $\Gamma_L^+$ . Let  $b \in L^+$  be an element with image  $\frac{1}{n}\gamma$  in  $\Gamma_L^+$ . It generates the maximal ideal of  $L^+$ , and  $a = b^n$  generates the maximal ideal of  $K^+$ . We have  $L = K(a^{1/n})$ , showing (c).  $\square$

The examples below show that finite Kummer étale maps are not finite in general as maps of schemes.

**Example 4.4.6** (Type 5 point). Let  $K$  be a field endowed with a henselian discrete valuation  $\nu: K \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \cup \{\infty\}$  and residue field  $F$ , and let  $\mu: F \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \cup \{\infty\}$  be another discrete valuation. Let  $K^+ \subseteq K$  be their composition, i.e. the subring consisting of elements  $x \in K$  such that  $\nu(x) \geq 0$  and  $\mu(\bar{x}) \geq 0$  where  $\bar{x}$  is the image of  $x$  in  $F$ . Then  $K^+$  is a valuation subring of  $K$  corresponding to the valuation of rank two  $\sigma: K \rightarrow (\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z})_{\text{lex}} \cup \{\infty\}$ . Such rings arise in practice in the geometry of adic spaces; for example, the residue field of a “type 5” point of the adic unit disc over a discretely valued non-archimedean field is of this type.

Let  $x \in K$  be an element with  $\sigma(x) = (1, 0)$ , let  $m > 1$  be invertible in  $K^+$ , and let  $L = K(x^{1/m})$ . Then  $L$  is a tame extension of  $K$ , and hence the morphism  $\text{Spec}(L^+) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(K^+)$  is finite Kummer étale. The homomorphism  $\Gamma_K^+ \rightarrow \Gamma_L^+$  is Kummer étale but not of finite type (see the related Example 2.5.3 (2)), and  $\text{Spec}(L^+) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(K^+)$  is not of finite type.

**Example 4.4.7** (Type 3 point). Let  $K$  be a field with a real valuation  $\nu: K \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$  whose image is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}^2$  (and hence dense). Such fields arise as the residue fields of “type 3” points on the rigid-analytic unit disc. Picking a basis  $1, \lambda \mathbb{R}$  of the value group  $\Gamma_K = \nu(K^\times)$ , the monoid  $\Gamma_+$  is identified with  $\{(a, b) \in \mathbb{Z} : a + b\lambda \geq 0\}$ . Let  $x, y \in K$  be such that  $\nu(x) = 1$  and  $\nu(y) = \lambda$ , and let  $L = K(x^{1/m}, y^{1/m})$  where  $m > 1$  is prime to the residue characteristic. Again,  $L$  is a tame extension of  $K$ , the monoid  $\Gamma_L^+$  is not finitely generated over  $\Gamma_K^+$  (see Example 2.5.3 (3)), and  $\text{Spec}(L^+) \rightarrow \text{Spec}(K^+)$  is finite Kummer étale but not of finite type.

**Example 4.4.8** (See [BGR84, §6.4.1, bottom of p. 250]). Let  $p$  be a prime and let  $K$  be the completion of  $\mathbb{Q}_p(p^{1/p^\infty})$  (which is a perfectoid field). Let  $L = K(p^{1/m})$  for some  $m > 1$  prime

to  $p$ . Then  $L$  is a tame extension of  $K$ , but  $K^+$  is not finite over  $L^+$ . The homomorphism of valutive monoids  $\Gamma_K^+ \rightarrow \Gamma_L^+$  is the inclusion  $\mathbb{Z}[1/p] \cap \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \frac{1}{m}\mathbb{Z}[1/p] \cap \mathbb{R}_+$ , which is not of finite type.

The following corollary is a restatement of Proposition 4.4.3 in terms of fundamental groups.

**Corollary 4.4.9.** *Let  $(K, K^+)$  be a henselian valued field, and let  $\overline{K}$  be an algebraic closure of  $K$ . Let  $*$  denote the geometric point  $\mathrm{Spec} \overline{K} \rightarrow \mathrm{Spec} K$ , and let  $K^{\mathrm{sep}}$  denote the separable closure of  $K$  contained in  $\overline{K}$ . The isomorphism  $\pi_1(K, *) \simeq \mathrm{Gal}(K^{\mathrm{sep}}/K)$  induces an isomorphism*

$$\pi_1(\mathrm{Spec}(K^+ \cap K^\times \rightarrow K^+), *) \simeq \mathrm{Gal}^t(K^{\mathrm{sep}}/K)$$

*with the maximal tame quotient  $\mathrm{Gal}^t(K^{\mathrm{sep}}/K)$  of  $\mathrm{Gal}(K^{\mathrm{sep}}/K)$ .*

## 5. SEMISTABLE REDUCTION OVER VALUATION RINGS

In this last, short section, we showcase our theory by elucidating the log structures on semistable schemes over arbitrary valuation rings, especially those with algebraically closed fraction fields. This relies on the results on sfp monoids over valutive monoids in §2.5.

**5.1. Log schemes of type (V) and of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ .** The following is a direct analogue of Definition 2.5.1 for log schemes.

**Definition 5.1.1.** A log scheme  $X$  is **of type (V)** (resp. **of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$** ) if locally it admits a chart  $P \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_X(X)$  with  $P$  of type (V) (resp. of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ ).

If  $Y \rightarrow X$  is a locally sfp morphism and  $X$  is of type (V) or  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ , then so is  $Y$ . Lemma 2.5.20 implies that for a log scheme  $X$  of type (V) (resp.  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ ), the stalks of the sheaf  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_X$  are monoids of type (V) (resp.  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ ). Moreover, we have the following property in type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ , as a consequence of the finiteness theorem for monoids (Corollary 2.5.18).

**Proposition 5.1.2.** *Let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be a locally sfp morphism between log schemes of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ . Then the underlying morphism of schemes  $\underline{Y} \rightarrow \underline{X}$  is locally finitely presented.<sup>7</sup>*

*Proof.* Working locally we may assume  $X$  has a global chart by a monoid  $P$  of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ , i.e. sfp over a divisible valutive monoid  $V$ . By Corollary 3.3.4, this chart can locally be lifted to a chart for the map  $Y \rightarrow X$  given by an sfp morphism of monoids  $P \rightarrow Q$ , with  $Y \rightarrow X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q$  strict and of finite presentation. By Corollary 2.5.18,  $P$  and  $Q$  are both finitely presented over  $V$ , and hence so is the map  $P \rightarrow Q$ . Then  $X \times_{\mathbb{A}_P} \mathbb{A}_Q \rightarrow X$  is of finite presentation, and hence so is  $Y \rightarrow X$ .  $\square$

The principal example of a log scheme of type (V) (resp. of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ ) is one (locally) admitting an sfp morphism  $X \rightarrow S$  where  $S$  (locally) admits a chart by a valutive monoid (resp. a divisible valutive monoid). In practice,  $S$  will be either the spectrum of a valuation ring  $K^+$ , with the standard log structure (see §4.4), or a closed subscheme of such a space, with the induced log structure, or a log point charted by a valutive monoid.

**Example 5.1.3** (Spectrum of a valuation ring). The key example is the following. Let  $K^+$  be a valuation ring with fraction field  $K$ . Endow  $S = \mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  with the standard log structure, charted by the valutive monoid  $M = K^+ \cap K^\times$  (see §4.4). As  $M$  is valutive, every log scheme  $X$  which is locally sfp over  $\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  or over a closed subscheme of  $\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  is of type (V).

If the value group  $\Gamma_K$  of  $K$  is divisible and (4.4.1) splits (for example, if  $K$  is algebraically closed), then  $\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  is of type  $(V_{\mathrm{div}})$ , and so is every log scheme  $X$  which is locally sfp over

<sup>7</sup>The map  $Y \rightarrow X$  is also locally finitely presented as a map of log schemes, i.e. it satisfies the same condition as a locally sfp map but with saturated pullback replaced with pullback in log schemes.

$\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  or over a closed subscheme of  $\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$ . In this case, the map  $X \rightarrow \mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  is finitely presented and saturated. We do not know if these assertions hold if we only assume that  $\Gamma$  is divisible.

**5.2. Log schemes over valuation rings.** Let  $K^+$  be a valuation ring with fraction field  $K$  and value group  $\Gamma$ . We assume that  $K^+$  is microbial (see §4.4) and fix a pseudouniformizer  $\pi$  of  $K^+$ . We endow  $\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$  with the standard log structure charted by  $M \rightarrow K^+$  where  $M = K^+ \cap K^\times$  as in Example 5.1.3, which coincides with the compactifying log structure induced by the open subset  $\mathrm{Spec}(K) = D(\pi) \subseteq \mathrm{Spec}(K^+)$ .

The following results follows easily from the Reduced Fibre Theorem for monoids (Corollary 2.5.17). In the discretely valued case, it is due to Tsuji [Tsu19].

**Lemma 5.2.1** (Log reduced fibre theorem). *Let  $Y \rightarrow X$  be a morphism between sfp log schemes over  $K^+$ . Then there exists a finite extension  $L$  of  $K$  such that the saturated base change  $Y_{L^+} \rightarrow X_{L^+}$  is saturated and finitely presented.*

We record here the following direct corollary of Proposition 5.1.2.

**Corollary 5.2.2** (Log Grauert–Remmert finiteness theorem). *Suppose that  $\Gamma_K$  is divisible and (4.4.1) splits (for example,  $K$  is algebraically closed). Then every morphism between locally sfp log schemes over  $K^+$  is saturated and locally finitely presented. In particular, a finite Kummer étale morphism between locally sfp log schemes over  $K^+$  is finite and finitely presented as a morphism of schemes.*

**5.3. The standard log structure over a valuation ring.** The main result of this section relates the log structure on a smooth and vertical log scheme over  $K^+$  to the log structure defined by the generic fiber, called the standard log structure. We preserve the setup and notation of the previous subsection.

Every scheme  $X$  over  $K^+$  can be endowed with the **standard log structure**  $\mathcal{M}_X^{\mathrm{std}}$  induced by the open subset  $X_\eta = D(\pi) \subseteq X$ . We have

$$\mathcal{M}_X^{\mathrm{std}} = \{f \in \mathcal{O}_X : \text{locally } fg = \pi^n \text{ for some } g \in \mathcal{O}_X \text{ and } n \geq 0\} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_X.$$

A log scheme  $X$  over  $K^+$  is **vertical** if the log structure on  $X_\eta \subseteq X$  is trivial. For example, any scheme over  $K^+$  endowed with the standard log structure is vertical. This notion is compatible with the notion of a vertical map of monoids introduced in Definition 2.4.1 in the following sense:  $X$  is vertical if and only if for every geometric point  $\bar{x} \rightarrow X$ , the homomorphism of monoids

$$\mathcal{M}_{\mathrm{Spec}(K^+), f(\bar{x})} \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_{X, \bar{x}}$$

is vertical. Indeed, since  $K = K^+[1/\pi]$ , the element  $\pi$  generates  $K^+ \cap K^\times$  as a face. Then both assertions mean that for every local section  $f$  of  $\mathcal{M}_X$  there exists locally a section  $\sigma$  of  $\mathcal{M}_{\mathrm{Spec}(K^+)}$  (which can be taken to be a power of  $\pi$ ) and a section  $g$  of  $\mathcal{M}_X$  such that  $fg = \sigma$ .

**Proposition 5.3.1.** *Let  $X \rightarrow S$  be a smooth and vertical morphism. Suppose that  $K$  is discretely valued, algebraically closed, or of equal characteristic zero. Then  $\mathcal{M}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X$  is injective and its image is equal to  $\mathcal{M}_X^{\mathrm{std}}$ .*

For  $X \rightarrow S$  semistable and  $K$  of rank one, this has been proved rather explicitly in [Tem17, Corollary 2.3.9]. Adapting this sort of method to our setting could be complicated. Instead, we will prove the result using approximation, employing the following variant of a result of Zavyalov [Zav24, Lemma A.2].

**Lemma 5.3.2** (Zavyalov). *Let  $K^+$  be a microbial valuation ring of a field  $K$  satisfying one of the conditions:*

- (a)  $K^+$  is an excellent (e.g. complete) discrete valuation ring,
- (b)  $K$  algebraically closed, or
- (c)  $K$  is of residue characteristic zero.

and let  $\pi \in K$  be a pseudouniformizer. Then  $K^+$  is isomorphic to the filtered colimit  $\varinjlim \Lambda_i$  of subalgebras  $\Lambda_i \subseteq K^+$  such that

- (1)  $\pi \in \Lambda_i$
- (2)  $\Lambda_i$  is a local ring and  $\Lambda_i \rightarrow K^+$  is a local homomorphism,
- (3)  $\Lambda_i$  is excellent and regular,
- (4) the divisor  $V(\pi)_{\text{red}} \subseteq \text{Spec}(\Lambda_i)$  has strict normal crossings.

Moreover, if  $K$  is henselian (resp. strictly henselian), then the  $\Lambda_i$  may be chosen to be henselian (resp. strictly henselian) as well.

*Proof.* In case (a) we can take  $\Lambda_i = K^+$ . Case (b) follows as in [Zav24, Lemma A.2] (the only difference is that Zavvalov assumes  $K$  to be of rank one, but that does not enter the proof), followed by replacing  $\Lambda_i$  produced this way with their respective localizations/henselisations/strict henselisations with respect to the map to the residue field of  $k$ . For case (c) we follow the same path, replacing alterations with resolution of singularities for schemes of finite type over  $\mathbb{Q}$ .  $\square$

In the situation of Lemma 5.3.2, let  $M_i = \Lambda_i \cap \Lambda_i[1/\pi]^\times$ . Then it is easy to check that

$$(M \rightarrow K^+) = \varinjlim (M_i \rightarrow \Lambda_i).$$

(filtered colimit in the category of saturated prelog rings). Even though the  $M_i$  are not fs monoids, the log structures they induce on  $\underline{S}_i = \text{Spec}(\Lambda_i)$  are fs and even log regular. Thus by [Kat94, Theorem 8.2], every smooth log scheme  $X_i$  over  $S_i$  is log regular. Consequently, the log structure on  $X_i$  coincides with the one induced by the largest open subset  $X_{i,\text{triv}} \subseteq X_i$  on which the log structure is trivial. If  $X_i \rightarrow S_i$  is moreover vertical, this open subset coincides with the subset where  $\pi$  is invertible, i.e.  $X_{i,\eta} = X_i \times_{S_i} S_{i,\eta}$  where  $S_{i,\eta} = \text{Spec}(\Lambda_i[1/\pi])$ .

Before turning to the proof of Proposition 5.3.1, we record here another consequence of Lemma 5.3.2.

**Corollary 5.3.3.** *Let  $K^+$  be a microbial valuation ring and let  $X \rightarrow S = \text{Spec}(K^+)$  be a qcqs smooth and vertical morphism. Then, there exists a finite extension  $L$  of  $K$ , a local regular excellent log scheme  $S_0$ , and a log smooth and vertical morphism  $X_0 \rightarrow S_0$  fitting inside a cartesian diagram in saturated log schemes*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \longleftarrow & X' & \longrightarrow & X_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ S & \longleftarrow & S' & \longrightarrow & S_0 \end{array}$$

where  $S' = \text{Spec}(L^+)$ , and such that the log structure on  $S_0$  is given by an snc divisor  $V(\pi_0) \subseteq S_0$  for an element  $\pi_0 \in \mathcal{O}(S_0)$  with image  $\pi \in \mathcal{O}(S') = L^+$ . If  $K$  is discretely valued or of equal characteristic zero, this holds with  $L = K$ . Enlarging  $L$ , we can moreover ensure that  $X_0 \rightarrow S_0$  is saturated.

*Proof.* Suppose first that  $K$  is algebraically closed. We have  $S = \varinjlim S_i$  as in Lemma 5.3.2 and hence by Corollary 3.5.7 there exists a smooth morphism  $X_i \rightarrow S_i$  whose saturated base change to  $S$  is  $X \rightarrow S$ . Increasing  $i$ , we may assume  $X_i \rightarrow S_i$  is vertical (in the sense that the log structure is trivial on  $X_{i,\eta} = X_i \times_{S_i} S_{i,\eta}$ ). For the latter assertion, note that since  $X_\eta \rightarrow S_\eta$  is strict and  $S_\eta = \varinjlim S_{i,\eta}$ , by Corollary 3.4.7 the map  $X_{i,\eta} \rightarrow S_{i,\eta}$  will be strict for  $i \gg 0$ . But  $S_{i,\eta}$  has trivial log structure, and hence so does  $X_{i,\eta}$ , and  $X_i \rightarrow S_i$  is then vertical. We set  $S' = S$  and  $S_0 = S_i$ .

The same argument works if  $K$  is discretely valued or of residue characteristic zero.

For the general case, we apply the above argument to the algebraic closure  $\overline{K}$  (endowed with some extension of the valuation) and note that there exists a finite extension  $L$  of  $K$  containing  $\Lambda_0$ , so that  $\overline{S} = \operatorname{Spec}(\overline{K}^+) \rightarrow S_0$  factors through  $S' = \operatorname{Spec}(L^+)$ .

By Lemma 5.2.1, we can make  $X' \rightarrow S'$  saturated. Then  $X_i \rightarrow S_i$  will be saturated for  $i \gg 0$ .  $\square$

We are now ready to prove Proposition 5.3.1.

*Proof of Proposition 5.3.1.* Clearly the image of  $\mathcal{M}_X$  in  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is contained in  $\mathcal{M}_X^{\text{std}}$ . We shall prove the other inclusion. Since the assertion is strict étale local we might assume that  $X$  is qcqs.

Let  $f$  be a local section of  $\mathcal{M}_X^{\text{std}}$ , i.e. a function  $f$  such that locally  $fg = \pi^n$  for some function  $g$  and  $n \geq 1$ . By Lemma 5.3.2 we find that  $X \rightarrow S$  is the base change of a log smooth vertical map  $X_i \rightarrow S_i$  such that there exist functions  $f_i, g_i$  on  $X_i$  with  $f_i g_i = \pi^n$ . Since  $\mathcal{M}_{X_i} = \mathcal{O}_{X_i} \cap \mathcal{O}_{X_i}[1/\pi]^\times$ , we have that  $f_i$  is a section of  $\mathcal{M}_{X_i}$ , and hence  $f$  is a section of  $\mathcal{M}_X$ . (Note that since the maps  $\mathcal{M}_{X_i} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X_i}$  are injective, so is their colimit  $\mathcal{M}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X$ .)  $\square$

Along similar lines, using the fact that log regular rings are normal [Kat94, Theorem 4.1] and that filtered colimits of normal rings are normal [SP, Lemma 037D], we can prove the following result.

**Lemma 5.3.4.** *Let  $X \rightarrow S = \operatorname{Spec}(K^+)$  be a log smooth morphism. Then the underlying scheme of  $X$  is normal and flat over  $K^+$ .*

**Remark 5.3.5** (Cohen–Macaulayness). Kato [Kat94, Theorem 4.1] shows that log regular local rings are not only normal but also Cohen–Macaulay. It is possible to extend the notion of Cohen–Macaulayness to non-noetherian local rings in several non-equivalent ways (see [KW20] and references therein as well as the discussion of Cohen–Macaulayness of semigroup rings). We do not know if log smooth schemes over  $K^+$  are Cohen–Macaulay in either of these senses. Note that Cohen–Macaulayness of filtered colimits with particular interest in semigroup rings has been studied in the recent paper [ADT14].

Finally, we link these results to the more classical notion of semistability used in [Tem17, Zav24].

**Definition 5.3.6.** A scheme  $X$  over  $K^+$  is **semistable** if étale locally on  $X$  there exists a pseudouniformizer  $\pi$  of  $K$ , an integer  $n \geq 0$ , and an étale map of schemes over  $K^+$

$$X \longrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} K^+[x_1, \dots, x_n]/(x_1 \cdots x_n - \pi)$$

We call  $X$  **strictly semistable** if such a structure exists Zariski locally on  $X$ .

Note that the pseudouniformizer  $\pi$  exists only locally on  $X$ , which causes some complications. See the discussion in [Tem17].

Then Proposition 5.3.1 implies the following result.

**Corollary 5.3.7.** *Let  $X$  be a semistable scheme over  $K^+$ . Then  $X$  is log smooth, saturated, and vertical over  $K^+$  when endowed with the standard log structure  $\mathcal{M}_X^{\text{std}}$ .*

*Proof.* Indeed,  $X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec}(K^+)$  is locally charted by the homomorphism of monoids

$$M \longrightarrow P_n(\pi) = M[e_1, \dots, e_n]/(e_1 + \cdots + e_n = \pi)$$

for some  $n \geq 0$  and a pseudouniformizer  $\pi$ . This homomorphism is log smooth, saturated, and vertical (see Example 2.4.5). Moreover, the induced map  $X \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec}(K^+ \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[M]} \mathbb{Z}[P_n(\pi)])$  is strict étale, and hence the result.  $\square$



## REFERENCES

- [SGA3<sub>II</sub>] M. Artin, J. E. Bertin, M. Demazure, P. Gabriel, A. Grothendieck, M. Raynaud, and J.-P. Serre. *Schémas en groupes. Fasc. 3: Exposés 8 à 11*. Institut des Hautes Études Scientifiques, Paris, 1964. Troisième édition, Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique de l’Institut des Hautes Études Scientifiques, 1963/64, dirigé par Michel Demazure et Alexander Grothendieck.
- [ACG<sup>+</sup>13] Dan Abramovich, Qile Chen, Danny Gillam, Yuhao Huang, Martin Olsson, Matthew Satriano, and Shenghao Sun. Logarithmic geometry and moduli. In *Handbook of moduli. Vol. I*, volume 24 of *Adv. Lect. Math. (ALM)*, pages 1–61. Int. Press, Somerville, MA, 2013.
- [ADT14] Mohsen Asgharzadeh, Mehdi Dorreh, and Massoud Tousi. Direct limits of Cohen-Macaulay rings. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 218(9):1730–1744, 2014.
- [SGA 4<sub>2</sub>] Michael Artin, Alexandre Grothendieck, and Jean-Louis Verdier. *Théorie des topos et cohomologie étale des schémas. Tome 2*, volume Vol. 270 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1972. Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique du Bois-Marie 1963–1964 (SGA 4), Dirigé par M. Artin, A. Grothendieck et J. L. Verdier. Avec la collaboration de N. Bourbaki, P. Deligne et B. Saint-Donat.
- [SGA 4<sub>3</sub>] Michael Artin, Alexandre Grothendieck, and Jean-Louis Verdier. *Théorie des topos et cohomologie étale des schémas. Tome 3*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 305. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1973. Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique du Bois-Marie 1963–1964 (SGA 4), Dirigé par M. Artin, A. Grothendieck et J. L. Verdier. Avec la collaboration de P. Deligne et B. Saint-Donat.
- [AHL24] Piotr Achinger, Katharina Hübner, Marcin Lara, and Jakob Stix. Finiteness properties of tame fundamental groups of rigid spaces, 2024.
- [ALPT19] Karim Adiprasito, Gaku Liu, Igor Pak, and Michael Temkin. Log smoothness and polystability over valuation rings, 2019. [arXiv:1806.09168](https://arxiv.org/abs/1806.09168).
- [AR94] Jiří Adámek and Jiří Rosický. *Locally presentable and accessible categories*, volume 189 of *London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994.
- [Bei13] Alexander Beilinson. On the crystalline period map. *Cambridge Journal of Mathematics*, 1(1):1–51, 2013.
- [BGR84] Siegfried Bosch, Ulrich Güntzer, and Reinhold Remmert. *Non-Archimedean analysis*, volume 261 of *Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften [Fundamental Principles of Mathematical Sciences]*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1984. A systematic approach to rigid analytic geometry.
- [BLR95] Siegfried Bosch, Werner Lütkebohmert, and Michel Raynaud. Formal and rigid geometry. IV. The reduced fibre theorem. *Invent. Math.*, 119(2):361–398, 1995.
- [Bos14] Siegfried Bosch. *Lectures on formal and rigid geometry*, volume 2105 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer, Cham, 2014.
- [BS15] Bhargav Bhatt and Peter Scholze. The pro-étale topology for schemes. *Astérisque*, 369:99–201, 2015.
- [Con07] Brian Conrad. Arithmetic moduli of generalized elliptic curves. *J. Inst. Math. Jussieu*, 6(2):209–278, 2007.
- [DY24] Hansheng Diao and Zijian Yao. Logarithmic  $A_{\text{inf}}$ -cohomology, 2024. [arXiv:2402.15154](https://arxiv.org/abs/2402.15154).
- [Ful93] William Fulton. *Introduction to toric varieties*, volume 131 of *Annals of Mathematics Studies*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 1993. The William H. Roever Lectures in Geometry.
- [GR03] Ofer Gabber and Lorenzo Ramero. *Almost ring theory*, volume 1800 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2003.
- [EGAIV<sub>3</sub>] Alexander Grothendieck. Éléments de géométrie algébrique. IV. Étude locale des schémas et des morphismes de schémas. III. *Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math.*, 28:255, 1966.
- [EGAIV<sub>4</sub>] Alexander Grothendieck. Éléments de géométrie algébrique. IV. Étude locale des schémas et des morphismes de schémas IV. *Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math.*, 32:361, 1967.
- [Ill02] Luc Illusie. An overview of the work of K. Fujiwara, K. Kato, and C. Nakayama on logarithmic étale cohomology. *Astérisque*, 279:271–322, 2002. Cohomologies  $p$ -adiques et applications arithmétiques, II.
- [Joh77] Peter T. Johnstone. *Topos theory*. London Mathematical Society Monographs, Vol. 10. Academic Press [Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Publishers], London-New York, 1977.
- [Kat89] Kazuya Kato. Logarithmic structures of Fontaine-Illusie. In *Algebraic analysis, geometry, and number theory (Baltimore, MD, 1988)*, pages 191–224. Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, Baltimore, MD, 1989.
- [Kat94] Kazuya Kato. Toric singularities. *Amer. J. Math.*, 116(5):1073–1099, 1994.
- [Kat21] Kazuya Kato. Logarithmic structures of Fontaine-Illusie. II—Logarithmic flat topology. *Tokyo J. Math.*, 44(1):125–155, 2021.



- [Kat22] Fumiharu Kato. Integral morphisms and log blow-ups. *Israel J. Math.*, 247(2):831–843, 2022.
- [KKMSD73] George R. Kempf, Finn Faye Knudsen, David Mumford, and Bernard Saint-Donat. *Toroidal embeddings. I*, volume 339 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1973.
- [Kos22] Teruhisa Koshikawa. Logarithmic prismatic cohomology I, 2022. [arXiv:2007.14037](https://arxiv.org/abs/2007.14037).
- [KW20] Youngsu Kim and Andrew Walker. A note on non-noetherian Cohen-Macaulay rings. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 148(3):1031–1042, 2020.
- [Nag66] Masayoshi Nagata. Finitely generated rings over a valuation ring. *J. Math. Kyoto Univ.*, 5:163–169, 1966.
- [Nak97] Chikara Nakayama. Logarithmic étale cohomology. *Math. Ann.*, 308(3):365–404, 1997.
- [Niz06] Wiesława Nizioł. Toric singularities: log-blow-ups and global resolutions. *J. Algebraic Geom.*, 15(1):1–29, 2006.
- [Ogu18] Arthur Ogus. *Lectures on logarithmic algebraic geometry*, volume 178 of *Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2018.
- [RG71] Michel Raynaud and Laurent Gruson. Critères de platitude et de projectivité. Techniques de “platification” d’un module. *Invent. Math.*, 13:1–89, 1971.
- [Ryd15] David Rydh. Noetherian approximation of algebraic spaces and stacks. *J. Algebra*, 422:105–147, 2015.
- [SP] The Stacks project authors. The stacks project. <https://stacks.math.columbia.edu>, 2023.
- [Sti02] Jakob Stix. *Projective anabelian curves in positive characteristic and descent theory for log-étale covers*. PhD thesis, Mathematisches Institut der Universität, 2002.
- [Tem17] Michael Temkin. Altered local uniformization of Berkovich spaces. *Israel Journal of Mathematics*, 221(2):585–603, September 2017.
- [Tsu19] Takeshi Tsuji. Saturated morphisms of logarithmic schemes. *Tunis. J. Math.*, 1(2):185–220, 2019.
- [TT90] Robert W. Thomason and Thomas Trobaugh. Higher algebraic  $K$ -theory of schemes and of derived categories. In *The Grothendieck Festschrift, Vol. III*, volume 88 of *Progr. Math.*, pages 247–435. Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA, 1990.
- [Vid01] Isabelle Vidal. Morphismes log étales et descente par homéomorphismes universels. *Comptes Rendus de l’Académie des Sciences. Série I. Mathématique*, 332(MR1817369):239–244, 2001.
- [Zav24] Bogdan Zavyalov. Altered local uniformization of rigid-analytic spaces. *Israel J. Math.*, 263(1):213–300, 2024.

PIOTR ACHINGER, INSTYTUT MATEMATYCZNY PAN, ŚNIADECKICH 8, 00-656 WARSAW, POLAND  
*Email address:* [pachinger@impan.pl](mailto:pachinger@impan.pl)

KATHARINA HÜBNER, INSTITUT FÜR MATHEMATIK, GOETHE-UNIVERSITÄT FRANKFURT, ROBERT-MAYER-STRASSE 6–8, 60325 FRANKFURT AM MAIN, GERMANY  
*Email address:* [huebner@math.uni-frankfurt.de](mailto:huebner@math.uni-frankfurt.de)

MARCIN LARA, INSTYTUT MATEMATYCZNY PAN, ŚNIADECKICH 8, 00-656 WARSAW, POLAND  
*Email address:* [marcin.lara@impan.pl](mailto:marcin.lara@impan.pl)

JAKOB STIX, INSTITUT FÜR MATHEMATIK, GOETHE-UNIVERSITÄT FRANKFURT, ROBERT-MAYER-STR. 6–8, 60325 FRANKFURT AM MAIN, GERMANY  
*Email address:* [stix@math.uni-frankfurt.de](mailto:stix@math.uni-frankfurt.de)